**REVIEW PAPER**



# **Unappreciated cross‑helicity efects in plasma physics: anti‑difusion efects in dynamo and momentum transport**

**Nobumitsu Yokoi1,[2](http://orcid.org/0000-0002-5242-7634)**

Received: 11 January 2023 / Accepted: 5 October 2023 © The Author(s) 2023

# **Abstract**

The cross-helicity (velocity–magnetic-feld correlation) efects in the magnetic-feld induction and momentum transport in the magnetohydrodynamic (MHD) turbulence are investigated with the aid of the multiple-scale renormalized perturbation expansion analysis, which is a theoretical framework for strongly non-linear and inhomogeneous turbulence. The outline of the theory is presented with reference to the role of the cross-interaction response functions between the velocity and magnetic feld. In this formulation, the expressions of the turbulent fuxes: the turbulent electromotive force (EMF) in the mean induction equation and the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses in the momentum equation are obtained. Related to the expression of EMF, the physical origin of the cross-helicity efect in dynamos, as well as other dynamo efects, is discussed. Properties of dynamo and momentum transport are determined by the spatiotemporal distribution of turbulence. To understand the actual role of the turbulent cross helicity, its transport equations is considered. Several generation mechanisms of cross helicity are discussed with illustrative examples. On the basis of the cross-helicity production mechanisms, its efect in stellar dynamos is discussed. The role of cross helicity in the momentum transport and global fow generation is also argued. One of the situations where the cross-helicity efects both in magnetic-feld induction and global fow generation play an important role is the turbulent magnetic reconnection. Characteristic features of turbulence effects in fast reconnection are reviewed with special emphasis on the role of cross helicity in localizing the efective resistivity. Finally, a remark is addressed on an approach that elucidates the structure generation and sustainment in extremely strong turbulence. An appropriate formulation for the anti-difusion efect, which acts against the usual difusion efect, is needed. Turbulence modeling approach based on such an analytical formulation is also argued in comparison with the conventional heuristic modeling. The importance of the self-consistent framework treating the non-linear interaction between the mean feld and turbulence is stressed as well.

**Keywords** Turbulence closure · Cross helicity · Dynamo · Flow generation

Extended author information available on the last page of the article

# **1 Introduction**

Astrophysical and geophysical and plasma physics phenomena, such as the formation of jets on giant planets, the 11-year solar activity cycle, the generation of Earth's magnetism, the large-scale vortical and magnetic-feld structures in interstellar medium, and jets from massive black holes, are characterized by the interaction processes of vast range of spatial and temporal scales. As such these amazing phenomena are almost invariably extremely turbulent. Magnetohydrodynamics (MHD) provides a good framework for understanding such turbulence with the mutual interaction between the fluid flows and magnetic fields. However, because of the vast range of scales it contains from the largest energy-containing scales to the smallest dissipation scales both for viscosity and resistivity, direct computations of the turbulent astrophysical and geophysical fows are simply impossible, even with using most sophisticated algorithms optimized for massively parallel computers. Also, because of the strong non-linear coupling among the modes or scales, we cannot expect any obvious scale separation in strong turbulence. Then for understanding the nature of turbulent MHD fows, developing a sophisticated statistical analytical theory and modeling turbulence on the basis of the theoretical results are of central importance. Here in this article, an approach for developing such a theory will be introduced. Such a theory will have a considerable impact on constructing a turbulence model that predicts the properties of amazing phenomena we encounter in astrophysics, geophysics, and plasma physics, beyond the conventional heuristic turbulence modeling.

In the theoretical formulation of large-scale structure formation, breakage of mirror symmetry plays an essential role. Such breakages are represented by pseudo-scalars such as the kinetic, magnetic (current), cross, and other generalized helicities. The statistical properties of helical turbulence and their consequences were reviewed in another review paper (Pouquet and Yokoi [2022\)](#page-95-0), and will not be treated in this paper. Also the basic characteristics of the cross helicity including the conservation, topological interpretation, pseudo-scalar properties, boundedness, relation to Alfvén waves, etc. were treated in other article (Yokoi [2013\)](#page-96-0), so the descriptions related to such characteristics will not be repeated in this article, either. Here, we focus our attention on two aspects of the turbulent MHD transport with primary importance: the magnetic-feld induction (dynamos) and the linear and angular momentum transport (global flow generation).

One of the main subjects in the dynamo studies is to explore the efects of turbulence in the mean induction equation. This type of studies is often called *the mean-feld dynamo theory*, which has historically gained several connotations. They include (1) kinematic approach; (2) ansatz for the turbulent electromotive (EMF) expression; (3) dynamo coefficients as constant or prescribed parameters; (4) exclusive  $\alpha-\Omega$  dynamo scenario for dynamo process; (5) azimuthal averaging as a substitute for the ensemble averaging; and (6) incompressible treatment of turbulent motions. Some of these treatments have played a role to consider dynamos in a simplifed manner. However, none of them is a basic ingredient of the

mean-feld dynamo theory. In the following, we briefy refer to these treatments (assumptions and approximations) one by one.

*(i) Kinematic approach* In the kinematic approach, the velocity feld in the induction equation is treated as a prescribed one. The evolution of the magnetic feld is subject to the induction equation with a fxed velocity. The feedback of the magnetic field to the velocity through the Lorentz force  $\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{b}$  in the momentum equation is neglected [**b**: magnetic field,  $\mathbf{j} (= \nabla \times \mathbf{b})$ : electric current density]. This kinematic approach of the dynamo has a long history and has provided a good tool for understanding the basic properties of dynamo actions, especially in some simple confguration (Tobias [2021](#page-96-1)). However, the dynamo process in the real world is usually non-linear, and the back-reactions to the velocity feld by the generated magnetic felds play a crucial role in the turbulence generation and consequently to the dynamo process. For instance, this importance of the feedback has been stressed in the context of the magnetorotational instability (MRI). Even a very week magnetic feld, coupled with a specifc confguration of rotation, can contribute to the turbulence generation (Balbus and Hawley [1998\)](#page-94-0). Then resultant dynamo properties are determined by the turbulent motions at least at an developing stage of this MRI process. In this sense, the kinematic approach has only limited relevance to the dynamo process.

*(ii) Ansatz for the turbulent electromotive force (EMF)* Another assumption which has been very often adopted in the mean-feld dynamo studies is the Ansatz that the turbulent  $EMF \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  is linearly related to the mean magnetic field **B** and its gratial derivatives ( $\mathbf{v}'_k$  relatively) when  $\mathbf{b}'_k$  meanwhich field fluctuation). This its spatial derivatives (**u**′ : velocity fuctuation, **b**′ : magnetic-feld fuctuation). This ansatz, based on the assumption of the linear relationship between the fuctuating magnetic field **b'** and the mean magnetic field **B**, greatly reduces the complexity of the mean magnetic-feld evolution, with the kinematic treatment. However, to obtain an expression of the turbulent EMF  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  in fully non-linear regime of turbulence, we have to directly treat the equations of the velocity and magnetic-feld fuctuations, **u**′ and **b**′ . These fuctuation felds depend not only on the mean magnetic feld **B** and its spatial derivatives, but also on the mean velocity **U** and its spatial derivatives. In addition, the system of equations of **u**′ and **b**′ is fully non-linear in the presence of the fuctuating Lorentz force. As these considerations indicate, the dynamo arguments based on the Ansatz are too simple, and their applicability is limited to very specifc simple situations such as the kinematic cases at very low magnetic Reynolds number  $(Rm = UL/\eta, U)$ : characteristic velocity, *L*: characteristic length scale,  $\eta$ : magnetic diffusivity or resistivity). This point will be argued in detail in Sect. [3.1.](#page-26-0)

*(iii) Dynamo coefficients as constant or prescribed parameters* Related to the ansatz mentioned above, the proportional coefficients for the mean magnetic field **B** and its derivatives,  $\alpha$ ,  $\eta$ <sub>T</sub>, etc., are often treated as adjustable parameters. However, this is nothing but the crudest approximation. The transport coefficients for the turbulent fuxes must refect the statistical properties of turbulence. As this consequence, these transport coefficients are not constants but vary in space and time refecting the spatiotemporal distributions of the turbulent statistical quantities such as the turbulent energy, turbulent helicity, turbulent cross helicity, the energy dissipation rate, etc.

 $(iv)$   $\alpha-\Omega$  *framework* The usual mean-field dynamo model is constructed in the framework of the  $\alpha-\Omega$  dynamo. In this framework, the turbulent EMF is assumed to be constituted by the  $\alpha$  effect proportional to the mean magnetic field **B** and by the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $\eta_T$  effect proportional to the curl of **B**. Another crucial ingredient is the inhomogeneous mean velocity that induces the mean magneticfield component vertical to the original field ( $\Omega$  effect). As will be discussed later in Sect. [3.1](#page-26-0), the inhomogeneity of the mean velocity alters not only the mean magnetic-feld component but also the properties of fuctuation felds. The equations of the velocity fuctuation **u**′ and the magnetic-feld fuctuation **b**′ depend on the mean velocity shear. If we retain these mean velocity shears in the **u'** and **b'** equations, the cross-correlation between **u**<sup> $\prime$ </sup> and **b**<sup> $\prime$ </sup>, or the turbulent cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  enters the turbulent EMF expression as the coefficient of the mean velocity shear. We see a marked difference between this cross-helicity effect and the usual  $\alpha$  effect, which is expressed by the correlation between the velocity and vorticity fluctuations,  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle$  $[\omega' = \nabla \times \mathbf{u}]$ : vorticity fluctuation] and the correlation between the magnetic-field fluctuation and the electric-current  $\langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j} \rangle$  [ $\mathbf{j}' = \nabla \times \mathbf{b}'$ ): electric current density fuctuation] coupled with the mean magnetic feld **B**. The cross-helicity dynamo efect, which is based on the dependence of the velocity and magnetic-feld fuctuations on the mean velocity shear, may pave the way for expanding the applicability of the mean-feld dynamo theories to the inhomogeneous turbulence.

*(v) Azimuthal averaging* In the mean-feld dynamo studies, the azimuthal averaging is often adopted as a substitute for the ensemble averaging. This sometimes severely limits the applicability of the mean-feld theories to situations where non-axisymmetric global structures play an essential role in the dynamo process (Schüssler and Ferriz-Mas [2003\)](#page-96-2). One way to adopt an averaging procedure other than the azimuthal averaging is to adopt a subgrid-scale (SGS) fltering which allows us to retain large-scale non-axisymmetric structures.

*(vi) Incompressible treatment of turbulence* Another ubiquitous assumption in the mean-feld dynamo studies is assuming the incompressible turbulence. One of the justifcations for the treatment of incompressible turbulence lies in the point that the magnetic induction equation does not explicitly depend on the density. However, statistical properties and dynamic behavior of turbulence is essentially diferent between the incompressible and compressible cases. There is no reason to discard compressibility in dynamo on phenomena with a high density variance  $\langle \rho'^2 \rangle$  ( $\rho'$ : density fluctuation) (Yokoi [2018a,](#page-96-3) [b\)](#page-96-4). Such a high density variance corresponds to a high Mach number case. We ubiquitously encounter astrophysical phenomena with a high Mach number, including the star-formation region in the interstellar medium and the interior of massive stars.

None of the above assumptions/approximations are intrinsic condition of the mean-feld dynamo theory. However, the term "mean-feld dynamo" theory contains some of the above connotations, and leads to misunderstanding on the scope of the theory. Therefore, we prefer using the term "turbulent dynamo" to "mean-feld dynamo" in the following.

Another important aspect of the turbulent MHD transport in the astrophysical and geophysical plasma context is the turbulent momentum fuxes. The linear and angular momentum transport due to turbulence is represented by the Reynolds stress  $\langle \mathbf{u}'\mathbf{u}' \rangle = {\langle \langle u'^i u'^j \rangle \rangle}$  and the turbulent Maxwell stress  $\langle \mathbf{b}'\mathbf{b}' \rangle = {\langle \langle b'^i b'^j \rangle \rangle}$ . They are sole quantities directly express the linear and angular momentum transports in the mean momentum equation. In astrophysical and geophysical as well as fusion plasma fow phenomena, turbulence is considered to play an important role in the angular momentum transport. An example is an accretion disk surrounding a central massive astrophysical body such as black hole. For the rotating plasma gas to accrete to the central object, the angular momentum should be transported by turbulence (Shakura and Sunyaev [1973\)](#page-96-5).

The angular momentum transport in the stellar convection is another important topic. It has been recently recognized that the current numerical simulations do not capture some basic characteristics of the solar convection. The convective velocity amplitude at large horizontal scales observed by helioseismic investigations is much smaller than the one predicted by global convection simulations (Hanasoge et al. [2012](#page-95-1), [2016;](#page-95-2) Proxauf [2021](#page-95-3)). The diferential rotation profle obtained by the global numerical simulations is not realistic in the sense that the azimuthal rotational velocity in the equator region does not show the solar-like prograde profle as compared with the one in the higher latitude region, but does show the retrograde profle, if the solar values of luminosity (energy transfer rate) and rotation rate are adopted in the simulation. Also, if the large-scale convection motions are actually small, how such weak fows can transfer the solar luminosity and mean diferential rotation rate observed in the helioseismology? These discrepancies between the numerical simulations and observations are called the convection conundrum (Schumacher and Sreenivasan [2020](#page-96-6)).

In the stellar convection problems, the conventional expressions for the turbulent fuxes (turbulent momentum, heat, and mass fuxes) on the basis of the gradient-diffusion approximation are known to be inappropriate since they give too destructive or dissipative efects on the fuxes. From the viewpoint of theoretical investigation of the turbulent fuxes, there may be several possibilities to resolve this convection conundrum. One possible way is to introduce the efect of coherent fuctuating motions such as plumes, thermals, and jets in the convective turbulence. Implementation of the coherent-structure efect into the modeling of convective turbulence has been considered important to capture the transport properties of turbulence (Rast [1998](#page-96-7); Brandenburg [2016;](#page-94-1) Green et al. [2020](#page-95-4)). Recently, the relevance of the nonequilibrium efect of turbulence along the plume motions has been pointed out in the context of the turbulence modeling of stellar convection (Yokoi et al. [2022](#page-97-0)). Since the non-equilibrium efect along the coherent fuctuating motions alters the length scale and timescale of turbulence, it directly afects the transport properties of turbulence (Yokoi [2023\)](#page-96-8).

The second possible way is to implement the rotation or global vorticity efect. Rotation is considered to suppress the convective motion and enhance the thermal transport at relatively smaller scales (Vasil et al. [2021](#page-96-9)). One of the studies to incorporate the rotation efect into the linear and angular momentum transport is through the kinetic-helicity inhomogeneity. It was found that, in the Reynolds stress expression, the absolute vorticity  $\Omega_* (\equiv \Omega + 2\omega_F)$  [ $\Omega (= \nabla \times U)$ : the mean vorticity,  $\boldsymbol{\omega}_F$ : rotation] is coupled with the inhomogeneous turbulent helicity represented by the gradient of turbulent helicity,  $\nabla$ **/***u* ⋅  $\omega$ <sup>*/*</sup>) (Yokoi and Yoshizawa 1002). Unlike the addu viseosity offect which exists from the turbulent energy [1993](#page-97-1)). Unlike the eddy-viscosity efect, which arises from the turbulent energy coupled with the mean velocity strain rate (the symmetric part of the mean velocity shear) and destroys the large-scale inhomogeneous fow structure by strong efective viscosity, this inhomogeneous turbulent-helicity efect arises from the presence of non-uniform kinetic helicity coupled with the mean absolute vorticity (the anti-symmetric part of the mean velocity shear). The latter efect is expected to contribute to generating and sustaining non-trivial large-scale fow structures such as prograde diferential rotation in the solar convection zone (Yokoi [2024](#page-96-10)). Since one of the generation mechanisms of turbulent helicity is coupling of a rotation and inhomogeneities of energy, density, etc., along the rotation axis, inhomogeneous turbulent helicity (spatial distribution and segregation) is ubiquitously present in a rotating spherical confguration (Duarte et al. [2016;](#page-95-5) Ranjan and Davidson [2024](#page-96-11)). In this sense, the inhomogeneous helicity effect is expected to play an important role in the angular momentum transport in the stellar convection zone.

The third possible way is to incorporate the magnetic shear efect into the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses. In this effect, the transport coefficient is expressed by the turbulent cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$ . The presence of the magnetic fluctuation  $\mathbf{b}'$  in statistical correlation with the unlessity fluctuation  $\mathbf{u}'$  is a sum fluctuation **b**<sup>'</sup> in statistical correlation with the velocity fluctuation **u**<sup>'</sup> is a crucial ingredient of this cross-helicity efect in the linear and angular momentum transport.

These theoretical consideration suggests that, in addition to the usual eddy-viscosity efect coupled with the mean velocity strain, the non-equilibrium efect coupled with the coherent component of fuctuations (plumes, thermals, and jets), the inhomogeneous helicity efect coupled with the mean absolute vorticity (rotation and large-scale vortical motion), and the cross-helicity efect coupled with the mean magnetic-feld strain may play some role in the linear and angular momentum transport. These efects have not been well explored in the previous studies of the turbulent fuxes in the stellar convection. The frst two efects have been argued in the other papers: the non-equilibrium efect along the plume motions in the stellar convection in Yokoi et al. [\(2022](#page-97-0)) and Yokoi [\(2023a](#page-96-8)) and the inhomogeneous turbulent-helicity effect in Yokoi and Yoshizawa [\(1993](#page-97-1)), Yokoi and Brandenburg [\(2016](#page-96-12)) and Yokoi [\(2024](#page-96-10)). In the present article, we will discuss the cross-helicity efect coupled with the global magnetic-field shear in the momentum transport, later in Sect. [6](#page-68-0).

The organization of this article is as follows. Following Introduction, the theoretical formulation for the inhomogeneous MHD turbulence is presented in Sect. [2.](#page-6-0) Our theoretical framework: the two-scale direct interaction approximation, a multiple-scale renormalized perturbation expansion theory is briefy outlined. Special reference is put to the distinction of the simple self-response Green's functions and the cross-interaction Green's functions. As examples of the application of the theory, the analytical expressions for the turbulent electromotive force in

the mean magnetic induction equation and the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses in the mean momentum equation are presented. In Sect. [3](#page-25-0), the cross-helicity efect in the dynamo is discussed. First, the physical origin of the cross-helicity efect, as well as the counterparts of the kinetic and electric current helicity efects and the turbulent magnetic difusivity efect, will be argued. Some numerical validations of the cross-helicity efect and related dynamo are presented. The properties of cross-helicity dynamo depend on the spatiotemporal evolution of the turbulent cross helicity. To better understand the cross-helicity evolution, the transport equation of the turbulent cross helicity is discussed in Sect. [4](#page-42-0). The representative production mechanisms of the turbulent cross helicity are illustrated with special reference to the feld confgurations leading to the cross-helicity generation. In addition, the evaluation of the cross-helicity dissipation rate is presented through the derivation of the equation of the cross-helicity dissipation rate. In Sect. [5](#page-60-0), the cross-helicity efect is applied to the oscillatory stellar dynamo. Unlike the kinetic and current helicities, the cross helicity is expected to change its sign across the reversal of magnetic feld. This property of cross helicity is fully investigated in the framework of the mean-feld dynamo equations. In Sect. [6,](#page-68-0) another important aspect of the cross-helicity efects, contribution in the momentum equation, is discussed. In the presence of non-trivial mean magnetic-feld confguration, the turbulent cross helicity plays an important role in the linear and angular momenta transport. The physical origin of the fow generation is discussed with reference to the role of the fuctuating Lorentz force in the momentum equation. Both of these efects of turbulent cross helicity: the magnetic induction and fow generation are expected to arise in the magnetic reconnection phenomena. In Sect. [7](#page-75-0), the turbulent efects in magnetic reconnection are argued. The cross helicity, which counterbalances the turbulent magnetic difusivity efect, contributes to the localization of the efective difusivity, leading to the fast reconnection. The concluding remarks are given in Sect. [8](#page-92-0), where a special emphasis is given in the counterdifusion efect in the turbulent EMF and the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses.

# <span id="page-6-0"></span>**2 Theoretical formulation**

In this section, we present the basic procedure of a multiple-scale renormalized perturbation expansion theory, the two-scale direct interaction approximation (TSDIA) (Yoshizawa [1984](#page-97-2); Yokoi [2020](#page-96-13)). To be specifc, we discuss the incompressible magnetohydrodynamic (MHD) turbulence (Yoshizawa [1990](#page-97-3); Hamba and Sato [2008;](#page-95-6) Yokoi [2013](#page-96-0)), which is favored for presenting the basic properties of MHD turbulent transport. It should be understood, however, the following formulation can be readily adapted to the strongly compressible MHD turbulence as well. The calculations are cumbersome, but are straightforward (Yokoi [2018a](#page-96-3), [b](#page-96-4)).

#### **2.1 Fundamental equations**

To show the basic theoretical formulation for a fuid plasma turbulence, we present here the fundamental equations of MHD for the incompressible or non-variable density fluid.

In the non-variable density case, a plasma fuid obeys the equations of incompressible magnetohydrodynamics, which are constituted by the momentum equation:

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} = (\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b} - \nabla p_{\mathrm{M}} - 2 \mathbf{\omega}_{\mathrm{F}} \times \mathbf{u} + \nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{u},\tag{1}
$$

magnetic induction equation:

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{b}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{b} = (\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{u} + \eta \nabla^2 \mathbf{b},\tag{2}
$$

and the solenoidal conditions of the velocity and magnetic feld:

$$
\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0,\tag{3}
$$

where **u** is the velocity, **b** the magnetic field,  $p_M = (p + b^2/2)$  the MHD pressure (*p*: gas pressure),  $\omega_F$  the angular velocity of a rotation,  $\nu$  the kinematic viscosity, and  $\eta$ the magnetic difusivity. Here, the magnetic feld is measured in the Alfvén speed unit defined by  $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b}_*/(\mu_0 \rho)^{1/2}$  ( $\mathbf{b}_*$ : magnetic field measured in the natural unit,  $\mu$ : magnetic permeability,  $\rho$ : density of fluid).

# **2.2 Mean and fuctuation in multiple‑scale analysis**

#### **2.2.1 Mean and fuctuation**

To see the turbulent effect on the mean fields, we divide a field quantity  $f$  into the mean  $F$  and the fluctuation around it,  $f'$ , as

$$
f = F + f', \quad F = \langle f \rangle \tag{4}
$$

with

$$
f = (\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{b}, p, \boldsymbol{\omega}, \mathbf{j}),\tag{5a}
$$

$$
F = (\mathbf{U}, \mathbf{B}, P, \mathbf{\Omega}, \mathbf{J}),\tag{5b}
$$

$$
f' = (\mathbf{u}', \mathbf{b}', p', \mathbf{\omega}', \mathbf{j}').
$$
 (5c)

Here,  $\omega$ (=  $\nabla$  × **u**) is the vorticity, **j**(=  $\nabla$  × **b**) is the electric current density, and  $\langle \cdots \rangle$ denotes the ensemble average.

Under this decomposition, the equations for the mean velocity  $U$  and the mean magnetic feld **B** are written as

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U} = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{R} - \nabla P_{\mathbf{M}} - 2\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\mathbf{F}} \times \mathbf{U} + \nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{U},\tag{6}
$$

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B} = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U} - \langle (\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}' \rangle + \langle (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}' \rangle + \eta \nabla^2 \mathbf{B},\tag{7}
$$

with the solenoidal conditions

<span id="page-8-2"></span><span id="page-8-1"></span><span id="page-8-0"></span>
$$
\nabla \cdot \mathbf{U} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0,\tag{8}
$$

Alternatively, the mean magnetic feld equation [\(7](#page-8-0)) is rewritten in the rotational form as

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}) + \nabla \times \mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} + \eta \nabla^2 \mathbf{B}.
$$
 (9)

In [\(6](#page-8-1)),  $\mathcal{R} = \{ \mathcal{R}^{ij} \}$  is the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses defined by

$$
\mathcal{R}^{ij} \equiv \langle u'^i u'^j - b'^i b'^j \rangle \tag{10}
$$

and  $P_M$  is the mean part of the total MHD pressure  $p_M \equiv p + \mathbf{b}^2/2$ , defined by

$$
P_{\rm M} = P + \mathbf{B}^2 / 2 + \langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle / 2. \tag{11}
$$

In  $(9)$  $(9)$ ,  $\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}}$  is the turbulent electromotive force (EMF) defined by

<span id="page-8-3"></span>
$$
\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} \equiv \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle. \tag{12}
$$

On the other hand, the equations of the velocity fuctuation **b**′ and the magnetic-feld fluctuation **b**<sup> $\prime$ </sup> are written as

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}'}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}' = -(\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U} + (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}' + (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B}
$$
\n
$$
-(\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}' + (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}' + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{R} - \nabla p'_{\mathbf{M}} - 2\omega_{\mathbf{F}} \times \mathbf{u}' + \nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{u}',\tag{13}
$$

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{b}'}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}' = -(\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B} + (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}' + (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U}
$$
\n
$$
-(\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}' + (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}' + \langle (\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}' \rangle - \langle (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}' \rangle + \eta \nabla^2 \mathbf{b}'
$$
\n(14)

with the solenoidal conditions

<span id="page-8-4"></span>
$$
\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}' = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{b}' = 0. \tag{15}
$$

In [\(13](#page-8-3)),  $p'_M$  is the fluctuating MHD pressure defined by  $p'_M = p_M - P_M$ .

# **2.2.2 Multiple‑scale analysis**

Considering that mean felds vary slowly at large scales while fuctuations do fast at small scales, we introduce two scales: slow and fast variables as

<span id="page-9-0"></span>
$$
\xi(=x), \mathbf{X}(=\delta x), \ \tau(=t), \ T(=\delta t), \tag{16}
$$

where  $\delta$  is the scale parameter. If  $\delta$  is small, **X** and *T* change substantially only when **x** and *t* vary considerably. In this sense, **X** and *T*, which are suitable for describing the slow and large variations, are called slow variables. On the other hand,  $\xi$  and  $\tau$ are called the fast variables. The scale parameter  $\delta$  is not necessarily small, but if  $\delta$  is small ( $\delta \ll 1$ ), there is a large-scale separation between the slow and fast variables. Because of the introduction of two scales defined by  $(16)$  $(16)$ , the spatial and temporal derivatives are expressed as

$$
\nabla_{\mathbf{x}} = \nabla_{\xi} + \delta \nabla_{\mathbf{X}}; \ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + \delta \frac{\partial}{\partial T}.
$$
 (17)

This means that the derivatives with respect to the slow variables **X** and *T* show up with a scale parameter  $\delta$ . Expansions with respect to  $\delta$  are derivative expansions. With these slow and fast variables, a feld quantity *f* is expressed as

$$
f(\mathbf{x};t) = F(\mathbf{X};T) + f'(\xi, \mathbf{X};\tau,T).
$$
\n(18)

Note that the fluctuating field  $f'$  depends on the slow variables **X** and *T* as well as on the fast variables  $\xi$  and  $\tau$ . Such a dependence of fluctuating fields on the slow variables is of essential importance for describing inhomogeneous turbulence.

### **2.2.3 Mean‑ and fuctuation‑feld equations**

In this two-scale formulation, the equations of the fuctuating velocity **u**′ is written as

$$
\frac{\partial u^{\prime i}}{\partial \tau} + U^j \frac{\partial u^{\prime i}}{\partial \xi^j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi^j} (u^{\prime j} u^{\prime i} - b^{\prime j} b^{\prime i}) + \frac{\partial p_{\rm M}^{\prime}}{\partial \xi^i} - \nu \frac{\partial^2 u^{\prime i}}{\partial \xi^j \partial \xi^j} - B^j \frac{\partial b^{\prime i}}{\partial \xi^j}
$$
\n
$$
= \delta \left[ b^{\prime j} \frac{\partial B^i}{\partial X^j} - u^{\prime j} \left( \frac{\partial U^i}{\partial X^j} + \epsilon^{jik} \Omega_0^k \right) + B^j \frac{\partial b^{\prime i}}{\partial X^j} - \frac{\tilde{D} u^{\prime i}}{DT} - \frac{\tilde{D} u^{\prime i}}{DT} - \frac{\partial}{\partial X^j} (u^{\prime j} u^{\prime i} - b^{\prime j} b^{\prime i} - \langle u^{\prime j} u^{\prime i} - b^{\prime j} b^{\prime i} \rangle) - \frac{\partial p_{\rm M}^{\prime}}{\partial X^i} \right],
$$
\n(19)

and the solenoidal condition:

<span id="page-9-2"></span><span id="page-9-1"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial u'^j}{\partial \xi^j} + \delta \frac{\partial u'^j}{\partial X^j} = 0.
$$
\n(20)

The counterparts of the fluctuating magnetic field **b**' are written as

$$
\frac{\partial b^{\prime i}}{\partial \tau} + U^j \frac{\partial b^{\prime i}}{\partial \xi^j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi^j} (u^{\prime j} b^{\prime i} - b^{\prime j} u^{\prime i}) - \eta \frac{\partial^2 b^{\prime i}}{\partial \xi^j \partial \xi^j} - B^j \frac{\partial u^{\prime i}}{\partial \xi^j}
$$

$$
= \delta \left[ u^{\prime j} \frac{\partial B^i}{\partial X^j} + b^{\prime j} \left( \frac{\partial U^i}{\partial X^j} + \epsilon^{jik} \Omega_0^k \right) + B^j \frac{\partial u^{\prime i}}{\partial X^j} - \frac{\widetilde{D}b^{\prime i}}{DT} \right] - \frac{\partial}{\partial X^j} (u^{\prime j} b^{\prime i} - b^{\prime j} u^{\prime i} - \langle u^{\prime j} b^{\prime i} - b^{\prime j} u^{\prime i} \rangle) \right], \tag{21}
$$

and the solenoidal condition:

<span id="page-10-2"></span><span id="page-10-1"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial b'^j}{\partial \xi^j} + \delta \frac{\partial b'^j}{\partial X^j} = 0.
$$
 (22)

Here, in order to keep the material derivatives to be objective, we adopt a co-rotational derivative

$$
\frac{\widetilde{D}u^{\prime i}}{DT} = \frac{\partial u^{\prime i}}{\partial t} + U^{j} \frac{\partial u^{\prime i}}{\partial x^{j}} + \epsilon^{jik} \Omega_{0}^{k} u^{\prime i}
$$
\n(23)

with

$$
\Omega_0 = \omega_F / \delta, \qquad (24)
$$

in place of the Lagrange or advective derivative

<span id="page-10-0"></span>
$$
\frac{Du'^i}{DT} = \frac{\partial u'^i}{\partial t} + U^j \frac{\partial u'^i}{\partial x^j},\tag{25}
$$

which is not objective with respect to a rotation. Note that the mean velocity gradient in the fuctuation equations:

$$
\frac{\partial U^i}{\partial X^j} + \epsilon^{jik}\Omega_0^k = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\partial U^i}{\partial X^j} + \frac{\partial U^j}{\partial X^i} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\partial U^i}{\partial X^j} - \frac{\partial U^j}{\partial X^i} + 2\epsilon^{jik}\Omega_0^k \right) \tag{26}
$$

is objective since the both the strain-rate tensor and the absolute-vorticity tensor are objective (Thifeault [2001](#page-96-14); Hamba [2006\)](#page-95-7).

A field quantity  $f'(\xi, \mathbf{X}; \tau, T)$  is Fourier transformed with respect to the fast spatial variable  $ξ$  as

$$
f'(\xi, \mathbf{X}; \tau, T) = \int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} f(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{X}; \tau, T) \exp[-i\mathbf{k} \cdot (\xi - \mathbf{U}\tau)],\tag{27}
$$

where the Fourier transform of the fast variable is taken in the frame co-moving with the local mean velocity **U**. Hereafter, for the sake of simplicity of notation, the arguments of the slow variable for the fluctuation field  $f(\xi, \mathbf{X}; \tau, T)$  are suppressed and just denoted as  $f(\xi;\tau)$ .

We apply the Fourier transformation  $(27)$  $(27)$  to  $(19)$  $(19)$  and  $(21)$  $(21)$  and to the solenoidal conditions  $(20)$  $(20)$  and  $(22)$  $(22)$ . Then we obtain the system of two-scale differential equations as

$$
\frac{\partial u^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau)}{\partial \tau} + v k^{2} u^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau) \n- i M^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \iint d\mathbf{p} d\mathbf{q} \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q}) \n\times [u^{i}(\mathbf{p};\tau) u^{\ell}(\mathbf{q};\tau) - b^{i}(\mathbf{p};\tau) b^{\ell}(\mathbf{q};\tau)] \n+ i k^{j} B^{j} b^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau) \n= \delta \left[ -D^{ij}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\tilde{D} u^{j}(\mathbf{k};\tau)}{DT_{I}} - D^{ij}(\mathbf{k}) u^{m}(\mathbf{k};\tau) \left( \frac{\partial U^{j}}{\partial x^{m}} + \epsilon^{m j \ell} \Omega_{0}^{\ell} \right) \n+ B^{j} \frac{\partial b^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau)}{\partial X_{I}^{j}} + b^{j}(\mathbf{k};\tau) \frac{\partial B^{i}}{\partial x^{j}} \right],
$$
\n(28)

<span id="page-11-1"></span><span id="page-11-0"></span>
$$
-ik^{j}u^{j}(\mathbf{k};\tau) + \delta \frac{\partial u^{j}(\mathbf{k};\tau)}{\partial X^{j}} = 0,
$$
\n(29)

$$
\frac{\partial b^i(\mathbf{k};\tau)}{\partial \tau} + \eta k^2 b^i(\mathbf{k};\tau) \n+ iN^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \iint d\mathbf{p} d\mathbf{q} \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q}) \n\times [b^j(\mathbf{p};\tau)u^{\ell}(\mathbf{q};\tau) - u^j(\mathbf{p};\tau)b^{\ell}(\mathbf{q};\tau)] \n+ i k^j B^j u^i(\mathbf{k};\tau) \n= \delta \left[ -D^{ij}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\tilde{D}b^j(\mathbf{k};\tau)}{DT_1} - D^{ij}(\mathbf{k};\tau)b^m(\mathbf{k};\tau) \left( \frac{\partial U^j}{\partial x^m} + \epsilon^{m j\ell} \Omega_0^{\ell} \right) \right. \n+ B^j \frac{\partial u^i(\mathbf{k};\tau)}{\partial X_1^j} + u^j(\mathbf{k};\tau) \frac{\partial B^i}{\partial X^j} \right], \n- i k^j b^j(\mathbf{k};\tau) + \delta \frac{\partial b^j(\mathbf{k};\tau)}{\partial X^j} = 0,
$$
\n(31)

where

$$
\left(\nabla_{\mathbf{X}\mathbf{l}}, \frac{D}{DT_{\mathbf{l}}}\right) = \exp\left(-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{U}\tau\right)\left(\nabla_{\mathbf{X}}, \frac{D}{DT}\right)\exp\left(i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{U}\tau\right) \tag{32}
$$

is the diferential operators in the interaction representation. Here in ([28\)](#page-11-0) and ([30\)](#page-11-1),

$$
M^{ijk}(\mathbf{k}) = k^j D^{ik}(\mathbf{k}) + k^k D^{ij}(\mathbf{k}),\tag{33}
$$

with the solenoidal projection operator

$$
D^{ij}(\mathbf{k}) = \delta^{ij} - \frac{k^i k^j}{k^2},\tag{34}
$$

and

$$
N^{ijk}(\mathbf{k}) = k^j \delta^{ik} - k^k \delta^{ij}.
$$
 (35)

They represent the non-linear interaction among the diferent modes.

# **2.3 Field equations**

#### **2.3.1 Scale parameter expansion**

We expand a field  $f(\xi;\tau)$  with respect to the scale parameter  $\delta$ , and further expand each feld by the external feld (the mean magnetic feld in this particular case).

$$
f^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \delta^{n} f_{n}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau) - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \delta^{n+1} i \frac{k^{i}}{k^{2}} \frac{\partial}{\partial X_{1}^{j}} f_{n}^{j}(\mathbf{k};\tau)
$$
  

$$
= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \delta^{n} f_{nm}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau) - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \delta^{n+1} i \frac{k^{i}}{k^{2}} \frac{\partial}{\partial X_{1}^{j}} f_{nm}^{j}(\mathbf{k};\tau).
$$
 (36)

In this two-scale formulation, inhomogeneities and anisotropies enter with the scale parameter  $\delta$  and the external parameters **B** in higher order fields. The lowest order fields  $f_{00}$  correspond to the homogeneous and isotropic turbulence.

Using the expansion  $(36)$ , we write the equations of each order in matrix form. With the abbreviated form of the spectral integral

<span id="page-12-1"></span><span id="page-12-0"></span>
$$
\int_{\Delta} = \iint d\mathbf{p} d\mathbf{q} \; \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q}),\tag{37}
$$

the  $f_{00}(\mathbf{k};\tau)$  equations are given as

$$
\begin{pmatrix}\n\frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + v k^2 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + \eta k^2\n\end{pmatrix}\n\begin{pmatrix}\nu_{00}^i(\mathbf{k}; \tau) \\
b_{00}^i(\mathbf{k}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix}\n+ i \begin{pmatrix}\n-M^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} u_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau) & M^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} b_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau) \\
N^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} b_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau) & -N^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} u_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix}\n\begin{pmatrix}\nu_{00}^{\ell}(\mathbf{q}; \tau) \\
b_{00}^{\ell}(\mathbf{q}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix}
$$
\n(38)\n
$$
= \begin{pmatrix}\n0 \\
0\n\end{pmatrix},
$$

the  $f_{01}(\mathbf{k};\tau)$  equations are given as

<span id="page-13-0"></span>
$$
\begin{pmatrix}\n\frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + v k^2 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + \eta k^2\n\end{pmatrix}\n\begin{pmatrix}\nu_{01}^i(\mathbf{k}; \tau) \\
b_{01}^i(\mathbf{k}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix}\n+ i \begin{pmatrix}\n-2M^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} u'_{00}(\mathbf{p}; \tau) & 2M^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} b'_{00}(\mathbf{p}; \tau) \\
N^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} b'_{00}(\mathbf{p}; \tau) & -N^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} u'_{00}(\mathbf{p}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix}\n\begin{pmatrix}\nu_{01}^{\ell}(\mathbf{q}; \tau) \\
b'_{01}(\mathbf{q}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix} = -ik^{ij}B^j \begin{pmatrix}\n0 & 1 \\
1 & 0\n\end{pmatrix}\n\begin{pmatrix}\nu_{00}^i(\mathbf{k}; \tau) \\
b'_{00}(\mathbf{k}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix}\nF_{01u}^i \\
F_{01b}^i\n\end{pmatrix},
$$
\n(39)

and the  $f_{10}(\mathbf{k};\tau)$  equations are

<span id="page-13-1"></span>
$$
\begin{aligned}\n&\left(\begin{array}{cc}\n\frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + v k^2 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + \eta k^2\n\end{array}\right) \left(\begin{array}{c} u_{10}^i(\mathbf{k}; \tau) \\
b_{10}^i(\mathbf{k}; \tau)\n\end{array}\right) \\
&+ i \left(\begin{array}{cc}\n-2M^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} u_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau) & 2M^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} b_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau) \\
N^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} b_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau) & -N^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} u_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau)\n\end{array}\right) \left(\begin{array}{c} u_{10}^i(\mathbf{q}; \tau) \\
b_{10}^i(\mathbf{q}; \tau)\n\end{array}\right) \\
&= B^j \frac{\partial}{\partial X_1^j} \left(\begin{array}{cc} 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0\n\end{array}\right) \left(\begin{array}{c} u_{00}^i(\mathbf{k}) \\
b_{00}^i(\mathbf{k})\n\end{array}\right) - D^{ij}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\tilde{D}}{DT_1} \left(\begin{array}{cc} 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1\n\end{array}\right) \left(\begin{array}{c} u_{00}^j(\mathbf{k}) \\
b_{00}^j(\mathbf{k})\n\end{array}\right) \\
&+ \left(\begin{array}{cc} -D^{ij}(\mathbf{k}) \left(\frac{\partial U^j}{\partial X^{\ell}} + \epsilon^{\ell j n} \Omega_0^n\right) & D^{ij}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial X^{\ell}} \\
-D^{ij}(\mathbf{k}) \left(\frac{\partial U^j}{\partial X^{\ell}} + \epsilon^{\ell j n} \Omega_0^n\right)\n\end{array}\right) \left(\begin{array}{c} u_{00}^{\ell}(\mathbf{k}; \tau) \\
b_{00}^{\ell}(\mathbf{k}; \tau) \\
b_{00}^{\ell}(\mathbf{k}; \tau)\n\end{array}\right) \\
&\equiv \left(\begin{array}{c} F_{10u}^i \\ F_{10b}^i \end{array}\right),\n\end{aligned}
$$

where,  $F_{01u}$ ,  $F_{01b}$ ,  $F_{10u}$ , and  $F_{10b}$  denote each component of the second right-hand sides (r.h.s.) of  $(39)$  $(39)$  and  $(40)$  $(40)$ . They can be regarded as the forcing for the evolution equations of  $f_{01}(\mathbf{k};\tau)$  and  $f_{10}(\mathbf{k};\tau)$ , respectively.

### **2.3.2 Introduction of Green's functions**

For the purpose of solving these diferential equations, we introduce the Green's functions. We consider the responses of velocity and magnetic felds to infnitesimal perturbations of velocity and magnetic fields,  $\delta$ **u** and  $\delta$ **b**. Such infinitesimal perturbations arise from the external stirring force  $\delta \mathbf{F}$ , for instance for the velocity perturbation  $\delta$ **u** as

$$
\delta u^i = \int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k}' \int_{-\infty}^t \mathrm{d}t' \mathcal{G}^{ij}(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}'; t, t') \, \delta F^j(\mathbf{k}'; t') \tag{41}
$$

with a Green's function in the wave number space. As this form shows, the Green's function itself is a random variable, which changes from one realization to realization of **u**.

It follows from  $(38)$  $(38)$  that the equations of the infinitesimal perturbations can be written as



<span id="page-14-0"></span>**Fig. 1** Green's function for solenoidal hydrodynamic turbulence. Response of velocity feld *𝛿***u**′ is created by a perturbation to the velocity feld **u**′



<span id="page-14-1"></span>**Fig. 2** Green's functions for solenoidal magnetohydrodynamic turbulence. Responses of velocity and magnetic fields,  $\delta \mathbf{u}'$  and  $\delta \mathbf{b}'$ , are created by perturbations of the velocity field  $\mathbf{u}'$  and magnetic field  $\mathbf{b}'$ 

$$
\begin{pmatrix}\n\frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + v k^2 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + \eta k^2\n\end{pmatrix}\n\begin{pmatrix}\n\delta u_{00}^i(\mathbf{k}; \tau) \\
\delta b_{00}^i(\mathbf{k}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix}\n+ i \begin{pmatrix}\n-2M^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} u_{00}^i(\mathbf{p}; \tau) & 2M^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} b_{00}^i(\mathbf{p}; \tau) \\
N^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} b_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau) & -N^{ij\ell}(\mathbf{k}) \int_{\Delta} u_{00}^j(\mathbf{p}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix}\n\begin{pmatrix}\n\delta u_{00}^{\ell}(\mathbf{q}; \tau) \\
\delta b_{00}^{\ell}(\mathbf{q}; \tau)\n\end{pmatrix}
$$
\n(42)\n
$$
= \begin{pmatrix}\n0 \\
0\n\end{pmatrix}.
$$

Here, we should note that the non-linear convolution terms in [\(38](#page-12-1)) have led to the linear contribution in the form

<span id="page-14-2"></span>
$$
\widehat{\mathbf{uu}} \rightarrow 2\widehat{\mathbf{u}\delta\mathbf{u}}, \quad \widehat{\mathbf{bb}} \rightarrow 2\widehat{\mathbf{b}\delta\mathbf{b}}.
$$
 (43)

One way to close a system of non-linear equations without resorting to a parameter representing the characteristic time [e.g., eddy damping in EDQNM (eddy-damped quasi-normal Markovian) closure] is introducing a formalism with response or Green's functions. In addition to the evolution equations of correlation functions, we consider the evolution equation of Green's functions, and close the system of nonlinear equations.

In the system of solenoidal hydrodynamic (HD) turbulence equations, what we have to consider is the Green's function  $G<sub>u</sub>$  which describes the response of the velocity fluctuation,  $\delta \mathbf{u}'$ , to the velocity perturbation  $\mathbf{u}'$  (Fig. [1\)](#page-14-0). However, in the compressible HD turbulence, where we have variables such as density and internal energy other than velocity, we have to consider multiple Green's functions that represent the complex interaction responses between the density, velocity, and internal energy fuctuations.

In the magnetohydrodynamic (MHD) turbulence, even in the simplest case of solenoidal turbulence, we have to consider the cross-interaction responses between the velocity and magnetic-feld fuctuations. As this consequence, we have to treat four Green's functions; the Green function  $G_{uu}$ : representing the velocity response  $\delta \mathbf{u}'$ , to the velocity perturbation  $\mathbf{u}'$ ;  $G_{ub}$ : the velocity response  $\delta$ **u**' to the magnetic perturbation **b**';  $G_{bu}$ : the magnetic response  $\delta$ **b**' to the velocity perturbation  $\mathbf{u}'$ ; and  $G_{bb}$ : the magnetic response  $\delta \mathbf{b}'$ , to the magnetic perturbation **b**′ (Fig. [2\)](#page-14-1).

From the left-hand side  $(l.h.s.)$  of  $(42)$  $(42)$  $(42)$ , we construct the system of equations representing the responses to the infnitesimal forcing. It follows that these four Green's functions should be defned by their evolution equations as

<span id="page-15-1"></span>
$$
\begin{pmatrix}\n\frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + v k^2 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + \eta k^2\n\end{pmatrix}\n\begin{pmatrix}\nG_{uu}^{ij} & G_{ub}^{ij} \\
G_{bu}^{ij} & G_{bb}^{ij}\n\end{pmatrix}\n+ i\n\begin{pmatrix}\n-2M^{ikm} \int_{\Delta} u_{00}^k & 2M^{ikm} \int_{\Delta} b_{00}^k \\
N^{ikm} \int_{\Delta} b_{00}^k & -N^{ikm} \int_{\Delta} u_{00}^k\n\end{pmatrix}\n\begin{pmatrix}\nG_{uu}^{mj} & G_{ub}^{mj} \\
G_{bu}^{mj} & G_{bb}^{mj}\n\end{pmatrix}\n= \delta^{ij} \delta(\tau - \tau') \begin{pmatrix}\n1 & 0 \\
0 & 1\n\end{pmatrix}.
$$
\n(44)

Refecting the structure of the MHD equations and the feld expansion [\(36](#page-12-0)), the left-hand sides (l.h.s.) of ([39\)](#page-13-0) and ([40\)](#page-13-1) or the differential operators to the  $f_{01}(\mathbf{k};\tau)$  and  $f_{10}(\mathbf{k};\tau)$  fields are in the same form as the equations of fluctuations to the infinitesimal perturbations  $(42)$  $(42)$ . Considering that the r.h.s. of  $(39)$  $(39)$  and  $(40)$  $(40)$  are the force terms, we formally solve  $f_{01}$  and  $f_{10}$  fields with the aid of the Green's functions. The *f*<sub>01</sub> fields are expressed as

<span id="page-15-0"></span>
$$
\begin{pmatrix} u_{01}^i \\ b_{01}^i \end{pmatrix} = \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau_1 \begin{pmatrix} G_{uu}^{ij} & G_{ub}^{ij} \\ G_{bu}^{ij} & G_{bb}^{ij} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} F_{01u}^j \\ F_{01b}^j \end{pmatrix},
$$
(45)

or explicitly written as

$$
u_{01}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau) = \int d\tau_{1} G_{uu}^{ij} F_{01u}^{j} + \int d\tau_{1} G_{ub}^{ij} F_{01b}^{j}
$$
  
= 
$$
\int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau_{1} G_{ub}^{ij}(\mathbf{k};\tau,\tau_{1}) \Big[-ik^{m} B^{m} b_{00}^{j}(\mathbf{k};\tau)\Big],
$$
 (46)

$$
b_{01}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau) = \int d\tau_{1} G_{bu}^{ij} F_{01u}^{j} + \int d\tau_{1} G_{bb}^{ij} F_{01b}^{j}
$$
  
= 
$$
\int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau_{1} G_{bu}^{ij}(\mathbf{k};\tau,\tau_{1}) \Big[-ik^{m} B^{m} u_{00}^{j}(\mathbf{k};\tau)\Big].
$$
 (47)

Note that  $\mathbf{u}_{01}$  and  $\mathbf{b}_{01}$  are expressed in terms of  $\mathbf{b}_{00}$  and  $\mathbf{u}_{00}$  coupled with the mean magnetic field **B**, respectively. Consequently,  $\mathbf{u}_{01}$  and  $\mathbf{b}_{01}$  multiplied by  $\mathbf{b}_{00}$  and  $\mathbf{u}_{00}$  in an external product manner will not contribute to the EMF.

On the other hand, the  $f_{10}$  fields are expressed as

$$
\begin{pmatrix} u_{10}^i \\ b_{10}^i \end{pmatrix} = \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau_1 \begin{pmatrix} G_{uu}^{ij} & G_{ub}^{ij} \\ G_{bu}^{ij} & G_{bb}^{ij} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} F_{10u}^i \\ F_{10b}^j \end{pmatrix},
$$
(48)

or explicitly written as

$$
u_{10}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau) = \int d\tau_{1} G_{uu}^{ij} F_{10u}^{j} + \int d\tau_{1} G_{ub}^{ij} F_{10b}^{j}
$$
  
\n
$$
= \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau_{1} G_{uu}^{ij}(\mathbf{k};\tau,\tau_{1}) \left[ -D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\tilde{D}u_{00}^{k}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1})}{DT_{1}} - D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \left( \frac{\partial U^{k}}{\partial X^{m}} + \epsilon^{mkn} \Omega_{0}^{n} \right) u_{00}^{m}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1}) + B^{k} \frac{\partial b_{00}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1})}{\partial X_{1}^{k}} + D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\partial B^{k}}{\partial X^{m}} b_{00}^{m}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1}) \right] + \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau_{1} G_{ub}^{ij}(\mathbf{k};\tau,\tau_{1}) \left[ B^{k} \frac{\partial u_{00}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1})}{\partial X_{1}^{k}} - D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\partial B^{k}}{\partial X^{m}} u_{00}^{m}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1}) - D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\tilde{D}b_{00}^{k}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1})}{DT_{1}} + D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \left( \frac{\partial U^{k}}{\partial X^{m}} + \epsilon^{mkn} \Omega_{0} \right) b_{00}^{m}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1}) \right],
$$
\n(49)

<span id="page-16-0"></span>
$$
b_{10}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau) = \int d\tau_{1} G_{bu}^{ij} F_{10u}^{i} + \int d\tau_{1} G_{bb}^{ij} F_{10b}^{i}
$$
  
\n
$$
= \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau_{1} G_{bu}^{ij}(\mathbf{k};\tau,\tau_{1}) \left[ -D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\tilde{D}u_{00}^{k}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1})}{DT_{1}} - D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \left( \frac{\partial U^{k}}{\partial X^{m}} + \epsilon^{mkn} \Omega_{0}^{n} \right) u_{00}^{m}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1}) + B^{k} \frac{\partial b_{00}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1})}{\partial X_{1}^{k}} + D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\partial B^{k}}{\partial X^{m}} b_{00}^{m}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1}) \right] + \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau_{1} G_{bb}^{ij}(\mathbf{k};\tau,\tau_{1}) \left[ B^{k} \frac{\partial u_{00}^{i}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1})}{\partial X_{1}^{k}} - D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\partial B^{k}}{\partial X^{m}} u_{00}^{m}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1}) - D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\tilde{D}b_{00}^{k}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1})}{DT_{1}} + D^{jk}(\mathbf{k}) \left( \frac{\partial U^{k}}{\partial X^{m}} + \epsilon^{mkn} \Omega_{0} \right) b_{00}^{m}(\mathbf{k};\tau_{1}) \right].
$$
\n(50)

# **2.3.3 Statistical assumption on the basic felds**

We assume that the basic or lowest order felds are homogeneous and isotropic.

$$
\frac{\langle \vartheta_{00}^i(\mathbf{k};\tau)\chi_{00}^j(\mathbf{k}';\tau')\rangle}{\delta(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{k}')} = D^{ij}(\mathbf{k})Q_{\vartheta\chi}(\mathbf{k};\tau,\tau') + \frac{i}{2}\frac{k^{\ell}}{k^2}\epsilon^{ij\ell}H_{\vartheta\chi}(\mathbf{k};\tau,\tau'),\tag{51}
$$

where  $\theta_{00}$  and  $\chi_{00}$  represent one of  $\mathbf{u}_{00}$  and  $\mathbf{b}_{00}$ , and the indices  $\theta$  and  $\chi$  do one of *u* and *b*. The Green's functions are written as

$$
\langle G_{\vartheta \chi}^{\vartheta}(\mathbf{k}; \tau, \tau') \rangle = D^{\vartheta}(\mathbf{k}) G_{\vartheta \chi}(\mathbf{k}; \tau, \tau'). \tag{52}
$$

The spectral functions,  $Q_{uu}$ ,  $Q_{bb}$ ,  $Q_{ub}$ ,  $H_{uu}$ ,  $H_{bb}$ ,  $H_{ub}$ , and  $H_{bu}$ , are related to the turbulent statistical quantities (the turbulent kinetic energy, magnetic energy, cross helicity, kinetic helicity, electric current helicity, torsional correlations between velocity and magnetic feld) of the basic or lowest order felds as

$$
\int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \ Q_{uu}(k;\tau,\tau) = \langle \mathbf{u}'_{00}^2 \rangle / 2,\tag{53}
$$

$$
\int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \ Q_{bb}(k;\tau,\tau) = \langle \mathbf{b}'_{00}^2 \rangle / 2,\tag{54}
$$

$$
\int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \ Q_{ub}(k;\tau,\tau) = \langle \mathbf{u}'_{00} \cdot \mathbf{b}'_{00} \rangle,\tag{55}
$$

$$
\int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \, H_{uu}(k;\tau,\tau) = \langle \mathbf{u}'_{00} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}'_{00} \rangle,\tag{56}
$$

$$
\int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \, H_{bb}(k;\tau,\tau) = \langle \mathbf{b}'_{00} \cdot \mathbf{j}'_{00} \rangle,\tag{57}
$$

$$
\int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \, H_{ub}(k;\tau,\tau) = \langle \mathbf{u}'_{00} \cdot \mathbf{j}'_{00} \rangle,\tag{58}
$$

$$
\int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \, H_{bu}(k;\tau,\tau) = \langle \mathbf{b}'_{00} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}'_{00} \rangle. \tag{59}
$$

# **2.4 Calculation of the electromotive force**

The turbulent electromotive force (EMF) is expressed in terms of the wavenumber representation of the velocity and magnetic feld as

$$
E_{\rm M}^i \equiv \epsilon^{ijk} \langle u'^j b'^k \rangle = \epsilon^{ijk} \int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \, \langle u^j(\mathbf{k}; \tau) b^k(\mathbf{k}'; \tau) \rangle / \delta(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{k}'). \tag{60}
$$

Using the results of  $(45)$  $(45)$ – $(50)$  $(50)$ , we calculate the velocity–magnetic-field correlation up to the  $f_{01}g_{00}$  and  $f_{10}g_{00}$  orders as

$$
\langle u^{j}b^{k}\rangle = \langle u_{00}^{j}b_{00}^{k}\rangle + \langle u_{01}^{j}b_{00}^{k}\rangle + \langle u_{00}^{j}b_{01}^{k}\rangle + \delta\langle u_{10}^{j}b_{00}^{k}\rangle + \delta\langle u_{00}^{j}b_{10}^{k}\rangle + \cdots
$$
 (61)

In the direct interaction approximation (DIA) formalism, the lowest order spectral functions  $Q_{uu}$ ,  $Q_{bb}$ ,  $Q_{ub}$ ,  $H_{uu}$ ,  $H_{bb}$ ,  $H_{ub}$ , and  $H_{bu}$ , and the lowest order Green's functions  $G_{uu}$ ,  $G_{bb}$ ,  $G_{ub}$ , and  $G_{bu}$  are replaced with their exact counterparts,  $\tilde{Q}_{uu}$ ,  $\tilde{Q}_{bb}$ , …, and  $\tilde{G}_{\mu\nu}$ ,  $\tilde{G}_{bb}$ , …, respectively as

$$
Q_{uu} \rightarrow \widetilde{Q}_{uu}, \quad Q_{bb} \rightarrow \widetilde{Q}_{bb}, \quad Q_{ub} \rightarrow \widetilde{Q}_{ub},
$$
  
\n
$$
H_{uu} \rightarrow \widetilde{H}_{uu}, \quad H_{bb} \rightarrow \widetilde{H}_{ub}, \quad H_{ub} \rightarrow \widetilde{H}_{ub}, \quad H_{bu} \rightarrow \widetilde{Q}_{bu}
$$
  
\n
$$
G_{uu} \rightarrow \widetilde{G}_{uu}, \quad G_{bb} \rightarrow \widetilde{G}_{bb}, \quad G_{ub} \rightarrow \widetilde{G}_{ub}, \quad G_{bu} \rightarrow \widetilde{G}_{bu}.
$$
\n(62)

Under this renormalization procedure on the propagators (spectral and response functions), important turbulent correlation functions are calculated. For the sake of simplicity, hereafter, the tilde denoting the exact propagator will be suppressed. Namely, the exact propagators are denoted without tilde.

Here we present the fnal results of the turbulent EMF as

<span id="page-18-1"></span><span id="page-18-0"></span>
$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle = \alpha \mathbf{B} - (\beta + \zeta) \nabla \times \mathbf{B} - (\nabla \zeta) \times \mathbf{B} + \gamma \nabla \times \mathbf{U},\tag{63}
$$

where transport coefficients  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\zeta$ , and  $\gamma$  are given as

$$
\alpha = \frac{1}{3} \left[ -I \{ G_{bb}, H_{uu} \} + I \{ G_{uu}, H_{bb} \} - I \{ G_{bu}, H_{ub} \} + I \{ G_{ub}, H_{bu} \} \right],\tag{64}
$$

$$
\beta = \frac{1}{3} \left[ I\{G_{bb}, Q_{uu}\} + I\{G_{uu}, Q_{bb}\} - I\{G_{bu}, Q_{ub}\} - I\{G_{ub}, Q_{bu}\} \right],\tag{65}
$$

$$
\zeta = \frac{1}{3} \left[ I\{G_{bb}, Q_{uu}\} - I\{G_{uu}, Q_{bb}\} + I\{G_{bu}, Q_{ub}\} - I\{G_{ub}, Q_{bu}\} \right],\tag{66}
$$

$$
\gamma = \frac{1}{3} \left[ I\{G_{bb}, Q_{ub}\} + I\{G_{uu}, Q_{bu}\} - I\{G_{bu}, Q_{uu}\} - I\{G_{ub}, Q_{bb}\} \right] \tag{67}
$$

with the abbreviate form of the spectral and time integral

<span id="page-18-2"></span>
$$
I\{A, B\} = \int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} \mathrm{d}\tau_1 A(k; \tau, \tau_1) B(k; \tau, \tau_1). \tag{68}
$$

# **2.5 Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses**

The Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses in the mean momentum equation are defned by

$$
\mathcal{R}^{ij} = \langle u'^i u'^j \rangle - \langle b'^i b'^j \rangle. \tag{69}
$$

In a similar manner as for the turbulent electromotive force  $\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}}$ ,  $\mathcal{R}$  can be calculated from **u**<sup>*'*</sup> and **b**<sup>*'*</sup> with

$$
\langle u^{j} u^{k} \rangle = \langle u^{j}_{00} u^{k}_{00} \rangle + \langle u^{j}_{01} u^{k}_{00} \rangle + \langle u^{j}_{00} u^{k}_{01} \rangle + \delta \langle u^{j}_{10} u^{k}_{00} \rangle + \delta \langle u^{j}_{00} u^{k}_{10} \rangle + \cdots, \quad (70)
$$

$$
\langle b^j b^k \rangle = \langle b^j_{00} b^k_{00} \rangle + \langle b^j_{01} b^k_{00} \rangle + \langle b^j_{00} b^k_{01} \rangle + \delta \langle b^j_{10} b^k_{00} \rangle + \delta \langle b^j_{00} b^k_{10} \rangle + \cdots. \tag{71}
$$

The expression of  $\mathcal R$  is given as

$$
\langle u^{\prime i} u^{\prime j} - b^{\prime i} b^{\prime j} \rangle_{\mathcal{D}} = -v_{\mathcal{K}} \mathcal{S}^{\mathcal{Y}} + v_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{M}^{\mathcal{Y}} + [\Gamma^i \Omega^j_* + \Gamma^j \Omega^i_*]_{\mathcal{D}},\tag{72}
$$

where  $\Omega_* (=\nabla \times U + 2\omega_F)$  is the absolute vorticity (the relative vorticity and the angular velocity of rotation), the strain rate of the mean velocity  $S = \{S^{ij}\}\$ and that of the mean magnetic field  $\mathcal{M} = \{ \mathcal{M}^{ij} \}$  are defined by

<span id="page-19-0"></span>
$$
S^{ij} = \frac{\partial U^j}{\partial x^i} + \frac{\partial U^i}{\partial x^j} - \frac{2}{3} \delta^{ij} \nabla \cdot \mathbf{U},\tag{73}
$$

$$
\mathcal{M}^{ij} = \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^i} + \frac{\partial B^i}{\partial x^j} - \frac{2}{3} \delta^{ij} \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^i} + \frac{\partial B^i}{\partial x^j},\tag{74}
$$

respectively, and the suffix D denotes the deviatoric part of a tensor as

<span id="page-19-2"></span><span id="page-19-1"></span>
$$
\mathcal{A}_{\mathbf{D}}^{ij} = \mathcal{A}^{ij} - \frac{1}{3} \delta^{ij} \mathcal{A}^{\ell\ell}.
$$
 (75)

The transport coefficients  $v_K$ ,  $v_M$ , and  $\Gamma$  in [\(72](#page-19-0)) are expressed as

$$
v_{\rm K} = \frac{7}{5}\beta = \frac{7}{15}\left[I\{G_{bb}, Q_{uu}\} + I\{G_{uu}, Q_{bb}\} - I\{G_{bu}, Q_{ub}\} - I\{G_{ub}, Q_{bu}\}\right], \tag{76}
$$

$$
v_{\rm M} = \frac{7}{5}\gamma = \frac{7}{15}\left[I\{G_{bb}, Q_{ub}\} + I\{G_{uu}, Q_{bu}\} - I\{G_{bu}, Q_{uu}\} - I\{G_{ub}, Q_{bb}\}\right], \tag{77}
$$

$$
\Gamma = \frac{1}{15} \left( I_{-1} \{ G_{uu} + G_{bb}, \nabla H_{uu} \} - I_{-1} \{ G_{ub}, \nabla H_{bu} \} \right). \tag{78}
$$

Here,  $v_K$  is the eddy viscosity coupled with the mean velocity strain  $S = \{S^{ij}\}\$ , and is determined mainly by the turbulent MHD energy as the frst two terms of the right-most equation ([76\)](#page-19-1) show. On the other hand,  $v_M$  couples with the mean magneticfield strain  $\mathcal{M} = \{ \mathcal{M}^{ij} \}$ , and is mainly determined by the turbulent cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  as the first two terms of the right-most equation [\(77](#page-19-2)) show. The transport coefficient  $\mathbf{F}$  couples with the obsolute verticity **Q** and is determined by the gradicoefficient  $\Gamma$  couples with the absolute vorticity  $\Omega_*$ , and is determined by the gradient of the turbulent helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle$ .<br>The expression of  $\mathcal{P}_i$  (72) indic

The expression of  $\mathcal{R}$  ([72\)](#page-19-0) indicates that, in addition to the eddy or turbulent viscosity  $v_K$  coupled with the mean velocity strain (symmetric part of the mean velocity shear), we also have other efects in the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses. One is the cross-helicity-related effect  $v<sub>M</sub>$  coupled with the mean magnetic-field strain, and the other is the inhomogeneous kinetic-helicity effect  $\Gamma$ coupled with the mean absolute vorticity (anti-symmetric part of the mean velocity shear).

The role of the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses and the consequence of the expression [\(72](#page-19-0)) shall be further discussed later in Sects. [6](#page-68-0) and [7](#page-75-0) with special reference to the large-scale fow generation and the linear and angular momentum transport.

#### **2.6 Symmetric and anti‑symmetric response function efects**

# **2.6.1 Standard self‑interaction response function efects**

In our formulations, we have four Green's functions,  $G_{uu}$ ,  $G_{bb}$ ,  $G_{ub}$ , and  $G_{bu}$ , whose defnitions are given in the evolution equations ([44\)](#page-15-1). If we assume that the crossinteraction Green's functions  $G_{ub}$  and  $G_{bu}$  vanish as

<span id="page-20-0"></span>
$$
G_{ub} = G_{bu} = 0,\t\t(79)
$$

the usual EMF for the incompressible turbulence is recovered. As the simplest possible model for the EMF, apart from the model constants, we have

$$
\alpha = -\tau_b \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} \rangle + \tau_u \langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle \equiv \alpha_S,
$$
 (80)

$$
\beta = \tau_b \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle / 2 + \tau_u \langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle / 2 \equiv \beta_S,
$$
\n(81)

$$
\zeta = \tau_b \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle / 2 - \tau_u \langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle / 2 \equiv \zeta_s,
$$
\n(82)

<span id="page-20-1"></span>
$$
\gamma = (\tau_b + \tau_u) \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle \equiv \gamma_S,
$$
\n(83)

where  $\tau_u$  and  $\tau_b$  are timescales associated with the Green's function  $G_{uu}$  and  $G_{bb}$ , and they are evaluated as

$$
\tau_{u} f(\mathbf{k}, \tau) \sim \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau' G_{uu}(\mathbf{k}; \tau, \tau') f(\mathbf{k}; \tau'), \tag{84}
$$

$$
\tau_b f(\mathbf{k}, \tau) \sim \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} d\tau' G_{bb}(\mathbf{k}; \tau, \tau') f(\mathbf{k}; \tau'), \tag{85}
$$

respectively. With special emphasis on the simplest dynamo model, we denote these transport coefficients with suffix S as  $\alpha_s$ ,  $\beta_s$ ,  $\zeta_s$ , and  $\gamma_s$ , as the right-most sides of  $(80)$  $(80)$ – $(83)$  $(83)$  show.

The alpha effect,  $\alpha$ **B**, the first term in [\(63](#page-18-0)), depends on the kinetic-helicity density  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle$  and the electric current-helicity density  $\langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle$ . The physical origin of the light of the light of the summer helicity of the milk has discussed in the following kinetic helicity effect and the current-helicity effect will be discussed in the following section (Sect. [3\)](#page-25-0). Equation [\(80\)](#page-20-0) shows that, if the kinetic helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle$  and current helicity  $\langle \mathbf{h}' \cdot \mathbf{h}' \rangle$  have the same sign, their effects are summersed with soah at her This helicity  $\langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle$  have the same sign, their effects are suppressed with each other. This is the reason why the current-helicity efect is often argued as a correction to the alpha efect, leading to the suppression or saturation of the alpha efect. However, this is not the case if the kinetic and current helicities are generated by each production mechanism due to large-scale inhomogeneities. This point will be discussed in Sect. [3](#page-25-0). We should note that the timescale associated with the kinetic-helicity contribution is the magnetic one  $\tau_b$ , while the counterpart associated with the electric current helicity is the kinetic one  $\tau_{\mu}$ .

The turbulent magnetic diffusivity effect coupled with the mean electric current density  $J(=\nabla \times B)$ , the second term in [\(63\)](#page-18-0), arises from the turbulent kinetic and magnetic energies. Since the magnetic energy  $\langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle$  contributions in  $\beta$  and  $\zeta$  completely cancel with each other, the magnetic diffusivity  $\beta + \zeta$  depends solely on the turbulent kinetic energy  $\langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle$ . It has been theoretically pointed out that the turbulent magnetic energy  $\langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle$  contributes to the turbulent magnetic diffusivity in anisotropic turbulence (Rogachevskii and Kleeorin [2001\)](#page-96-15) and in the presence of compressibility (Yokoi [2018a\)](#page-96-3).

The magnetic pumping effect  $-(\nabla \zeta) \times \mathbf{B}$ , the third term in [\(63](#page-18-0)), depends on the gradient of the MHD residual energy  $\langle \mathbf{u}'^2 - \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle / 2$ . For the same mean magnetic field **B**, the direction of the pumping effect alters depending on the direction of  $\nabla \zeta$ .

The cross-helicity effect  $\gamma \Omega_{\nu}$ , the fourth term in [\(63\)](#page-18-0), arises from the turbulent cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$ . This effect is expected to play an important role in dynamo in the presence of the global vortical motion or rotation represented by the mean absolute vorticity  $\Omega_* (= \nabla \times \mathbf{U} + 2\omega_F) (\omega_F$ : angular velocity of rotation).

#### **2.6.2 Efects of cross‑interaction response functions**

If we retain the contributions from the cross-interaction Green's functions  $G_{ub}$  and  $G_{bu}$ , the third and fourth terms in each of  $(64)$ – $(64)$ , we have additional contributions to the dynamo transport coefficients *α*,  $\beta$ ,  $\zeta$ , and  $\gamma$ . To get a clear picture on the cross-interaction Green's functions, we frst consider the counterpart of the cross-interaction in the Elsässer-variable formulation (Yoshizawa [1990;](#page-97-3) Yokoi [2013](#page-96-0)).

In the Elsässer-variable formulation with  $\phi = \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{b}$  and  $\psi = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{b}$ , we introduce four Green's functions,  $G_{\phi\phi}$ ,  $G_{\psi\psi}$ ,  $G_{\phi\psi}$ , and  $G_{\psi\phi}$ . In this formulation, the transport coefficients of the turbulent EMF are expressed as

$$
\alpha = -I\{G_{\rm S}, H_{uu}\} + I\{G_{\rm S}, H_{bb}\} - I\{G_{\rm A}, H_{ub}\} + I\{G_{\rm A}, H_{bu}\},\tag{86}
$$

$$
\beta = I\{G_S, Q_{uu}\} + I\{G_S, Q_{bb}\} - I\{G_A, Q_{ub}\} - I\{G_A, Q_{bu}\},\tag{87}
$$

$$
\zeta = I\{G_S, Q_{uu}\} - I\{G_S, Q_{bb}\} + I\{G_A, Q_{ub}\} - I\{G_A, Q_{bu}\},\tag{88}
$$

$$
\gamma = I\{G_S, Q_{ub}\} + I\{G_S, Q_{bu}\} - I\{G_A, Q_{uu}\} - I\{G_A, Q_{bb}\},\tag{89}
$$

where  $G_S$  and  $G_A$  denote the mirror symmetric and anti-mirror symmetric parts of  $G_{\phi\phi}$  and  $G_{\psi\psi}$ , defined by

<span id="page-22-1"></span><span id="page-22-0"></span>
$$
G_{\rm S} = \frac{G_{\phi\phi} + G_{\psi\psi}}{2},\tag{90}
$$

<span id="page-22-2"></span>
$$
G_{\rm A} = \frac{G_{\phi\phi} - G_{\psi\psi}}{2},\tag{91}
$$

respectively.

Comparing  $(86)$  $(86)$ – $(89)$  $(89)$  with  $(64)$  $(64)$ – $(67)$  $(67)$ , we see that the self-interaction part  $G_{uu}$  and  $G_{bb}$  corresponds to the symmetric part,  $G_S$ , while the cross-interaction part,  $G_{ub}$  and  $G_{bu}$ , does the anti-symmetric part,  $G_A$ . We see from [\(91](#page-22-2)) that the anti-symmetric part  $G_A$  is connected to the difference between the timescales associated with the Alfvén waves propagating in the counter-parallel and pro-parallel directions along the magnetic feld. The imbalance between the counter- and pro-propagating Alfvén waves results in a non-vanishing turbulent cross helicity. These points suggest that non-vanishing  $G_{ub}$  and  $G_{bu}$  are linked to the turbulent cross helicity.

Following the above consideration, the dynamo coefficients  $d = (\alpha, \beta, \zeta, \gamma)$  are constituted of  $d<sub>S</sub>$  and  $d<sub>X</sub>$  as

<span id="page-22-3"></span>
$$
d = d_S + d_X,\tag{92}
$$

where  $d<sub>S</sub>$  is the standard *d* coefficients defined by ([80\)](#page-20-0)–[\(83](#page-20-1)). The cross-interaction parts of the dynamo coefficients,  $\alpha_X$ ,  $\beta_X$ ,  $\zeta_X$ , and  $\gamma_X$ , are expressed from the third and fourth terms of  $(64)$  $(64)$ – $(67)$  $(67)$  as

$$
\alpha_{\rm X} = \frac{1}{3} \left[ -I \{ G_{bu}, H_{ub} \} + I \{ G_{ub}, H_{bu} \} \right],\tag{93}
$$

$$
\beta_X = \frac{1}{3} \left[ -I \{ G_{bu}, Q_{ub} \} - I \{ G_{ub}, Q_{bu} \} \right],\tag{94}
$$

$$
\zeta_X = \frac{1}{3} \left[ +I\{G_{bu}, Q_{ub}\} - I\{G_{ub}, Q_{bu}\} \right],\tag{95}
$$

$$
\gamma_{\rm X} = \frac{1}{3} \left[ -I \{ G_{bu}, Q_{uu} \} + I \{ G_{ub}, Q_{bb} \} \right]. \tag{96}
$$

These cross-interaction dynamo coefficients may be modeled as

<span id="page-23-0"></span>
$$
\alpha_{\rm X} = -\tau_{\rm Xbu} \Upsilon \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle + \tau_{\rm Xub} \Upsilon \langle \boldsymbol{\omega}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle, \tag{97}
$$

$$
\beta_{\rm X} = -\tau_{\rm Xbu} \Upsilon \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle - \tau_{\rm Xub} \Upsilon \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle, \tag{98}
$$

$$
\zeta_X = + \tau_{Xbu} \Upsilon \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle - \tau_{Xub} \Upsilon \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle, \tag{99}
$$

<span id="page-23-2"></span>
$$
\gamma_{\rm X} = -\tau_{\rm Xbu} \Upsilon \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle + \tau_{\rm Xub} \Upsilon \langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle, \tag{100}
$$

where  $\tau_{Xbu}$  and  $\tau_{Xub}$  are timescales associated with the Green's functions  $G_{bu}$  and *Gub*, respectively.

It should be noted here that this cross-interaction efect arises from the formulation with response functions. In addition to the evolution equations of velocity and magnetic felds, the equations of response functions are also treated. Due to this formulation, the response of velocity fuctuation to magnetic disturbance and the response of magnetic-feld fuctuation to velocity disturbance enter the expressions of turbulent fuxes. However, characteristics and properties of the cross-response efect have not been fully explored. In the rest of this subsection, we briefy consider the condition for this crossresponse effect.

For instance, the transport coefficient  $\alpha_X$  as well as  $\alpha_S$  is a pseudo-scalar. Since both  $\langle$ **u'** · **j** $\langle$  and  $\langle$ **ø'** · **b**<sup> $\langle$ </sup>) are pure scalars, we need a pseudo-scalar factor Υ in ([97\)](#page-23-0). This is a direct consequence of the fact that the Green's functions  $G_{bu}$  and  $G_{ub}$  are pseudo-scalar functions as their defnitions [\(44](#page-15-1)) show. As the simplest possible candidate, we adopt a non-dimensional pseudo-scalar quantity defned by

$$
\Upsilon = \frac{\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{u}'^2 + \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle / 2},\tag{101}
$$

or alternatively we may adopt

$$
\Upsilon = \frac{\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle}{\sqrt{\langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle} \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle}}.
$$
(102)

The  $\alpha_X$  expression [\(93](#page-22-3)) and its model [\(97](#page-23-0)) suggest that there are some conditions for this cross-interaction response efect to work. First we have to remark that the torsional cross-correlations  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle$  and  $\langle \boldsymbol{\omega}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  are exactly related to each other as

$$
-\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle + \langle \boldsymbol{\omega}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle = \nabla \cdot \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle.
$$
 (103)

In homogeneous turbulence, the r.h.s. of ([103\)](#page-23-1) vanishes, and we have

<span id="page-23-1"></span>
$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{\omega}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle. \tag{104}
$$

In this case, we have no contribution to  $\alpha_X$  for  $\tau_{bu} = \tau_{ub}$ . This suggests a few conditions for the cross-response efect to work.

#### *(i) Flux of electromotive force across boundaries*

Even if we have no timescale difference ( $\tau_{bu} = \tau_{ub}$ ), non-zero flux of the turbulent EMF across the boundary  $\nabla \cdot \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  may lead to a finite  $\alpha_X$ . We see from [\(103](#page-23-1)) that difference between  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle$  and  $\langle \boldsymbol{\omega}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  is expressed by the transport or flux of  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \rangle \langle \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  cancer the houndaries. If we substitute (62) into  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \rangle \langle \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  we obtain  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  across the boundaries. If we substitute [\(63](#page-18-0)) into  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$ , we obtain

<span id="page-24-0"></span>
$$
-\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle + \langle \omega' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle = \nabla \cdot \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle
$$
  
=  $\nabla \cdot [\alpha \mathbf{B} - (\beta + \zeta) \nabla \times \mathbf{B} - (\nabla \zeta) \times \mathbf{B} + \gamma \nabla \times \mathbf{U}]$  (105)  
=  $-(\mathbf{J} \cdot \nabla)\beta + (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)\alpha + (\mathbf{\Omega} \cdot \nabla)\gamma.$ 

Here use has been made of the solenoidal conditions of **B**, **J**, and  $\Omega$ . The final expression of [\(105](#page-24-0)) suggests the possibility to produce  $\alpha_X$  through the inhomogeneities of MHD turbulence along the mean fields,  $\bf{J}$ ,  $\bf{B}$ , and  $\bf{\Omega}$ . The first term  $-(\mathbf{J} \cdot \nabla)\beta$  suggests that the EMF flux  $\nabla \cdot \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  is present if  $\beta$  is inhomogene-<br>suggesting the mean electric numeral density **I**. This effect numing that the turbulant ous along the mean electric current density **J**. This efect requires that the turbulent MHD energy  $\langle \mathbf{u}'^2 + \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle / 2$  is non-uniform along the mean electric current density. This is possible even though we have no pseudo-scalar efect such as kinetic, current, and cross helicities. In this sense, this  $-(\mathbf{J} \cdot \nabla)\beta$  effect may be the primary one contributing to the cross-interaction response or  $\alpha_X$  effect in the astrophysical magnetic-field configuration with the mean electric current **J**. In addition to this  $\beta$ effect, we have the pseudo-scalar-related  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  contributions to the  $\alpha_X$  effect. The second term  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \alpha$  requires the inhomogeneity of  $\alpha$  (turbulent residual helicity  $-(\mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{\omega}') + (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}')$  along the mean magnetic field **B**. And the third term  $(\mathbf{\Omega} \cdot \nabla)$  $\gamma$ requires the inhomogeneity of  $\gamma$  (cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$ ) along the mean vorticity  $\Omega = \nabla \times \mathbf{U}$  or rotation  $\omega_{\text{F}}$ . This  $(\Omega \cdot \nabla)\gamma$  effect is expected to contribute to the  $\alpha_{\text{X}}$  in the absence of the mean magnetic field configuration.

#### *(ii) Difference between*  $G_{ub}$  *and*  $G_{bu}$

Even in homogeneous turbulence, where  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{\omega}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$ , if there is a time-<br>ble difference between a send a sum house a new sense we Can of the negative scale difference between  $\tau_{bu}$  and  $\tau_{ub}$ , we have a non-zero  $\alpha_X$ . One of the possible situations where the difference between  $\tau_{bu}$  and  $\tau_{ub}$ , or more fundamentally the difference between  $G_{ba}$  and  $G_{ub}$ , is salient, is a case with large difference between



<span id="page-24-1"></span>**Fig. 3** Schematic illustration of kinetic and magnetic energy spectra with huge magnetic Prandtl number *Pm* =  $v/\eta \gg 1$ . Velocity-field viscosity scale is  $\ell_v$ , and magnetic-field resistive scale is  $\ell_u$ 

viscosity  $\nu$  and resistivity  $\eta$ , corresponding to either very high or small magnetic Prandtl number,  $Pm = \nu / \eta \gg 1$  or  $Pm = \nu / \eta \ll 1$ . For instance, we consider a huge magnetic Prandtl number case with  $Pm = v/\eta \gg 1$ , which is ubiquitously observed in the galaxy cluster plasma and interstellar medium turbulence where  $\nu \gg \eta$ . In this case, there is a huge gap between the velocity-field viscosity scale and the smallest magnetic-feld resistive scale (Fig. [3\)](#page-24-1). The velocity feld is always subject to the presence of magnetic feld without feeling the efect of a finite (non-zero)  $\eta$  while the magnetic field always feels the effect of a finite  $\nu$ . This may make diference between the cross-interaction response of the velocity field to the magnetic-field perturbation represented by  $G_{ub}$  and the response of the magnetic field to the velocity-field perturbation represented by  $G_{b\nu}$ .

# *(iii) Non-equilibrium efect and co-existence of kinetic and cross helicities*

The pseudo-scalar factor Y in [\(97\)](#page-23-0)–([100](#page-23-2)) coupled with the timescale  $\tau_{bu}$ and  $\tau_{ub}$ , should represent  $G_{bu}$  and  $G_{ub}$ . The torsional cross-correlations may be regarded as the combination of the cross helicity and the helicities as

$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle \propto \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle \langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle, \tag{106}
$$

$$
\langle \omega' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle \propto \langle \omega' \cdot \mathbf{u}' \rangle \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle, \tag{107}
$$

This suggests that the coexistence of the cross helicity and current helicity and the coexistence of the cross helicity and kinetic helicity may be favorable conditions for the cross-interaction response effect  $\alpha_X$ . In this sense, the turbulent cross helicity may play a key role in this cross-interaction efect. As an important possibility, the cross-interaction response effect in the  $\alpha$  effect,  $\alpha_X$ , is investigated in the non-equilibrium or non-stationary turbulence in Mizerski et al. ([2023\)](#page-95-8).

These cross-response efects may bear a remarkable relevance to some astrophysical and plasma physics phenomena. Especially under some conditions, such as turbulence with non-equilibrium and non-stationary property or with breakage of some symmetry. Such conditions might be ubiquitously met in some extreme situations in astrophysical and plasma physics. These novel efects are required to be extensively explored in the future studies. Keeping this point in mind, however, we only treat the standard or selfinteraction response-function efects in the following sections. This does not deny the potential importance of cross-response effects.

# <span id="page-25-0"></span>**3 Cross‑helicity efect in dynamos**

In the previous section, with the aid of analytical formulation for the inhomogeneous turbulence: the multiple-scale renormalized perturbation expansion theory, the expressions of the turbulent electromotive force (EMF)  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  in the mean induction equation and the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses  $\langle \mathbf{u}'\mathbf{u}' - \mathbf{b}'\mathbf{b}' \rangle$  in the mean momentum equation, are derived. The turbulent cross-helicity efect gets into the  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  expression coupled with the inhomogeneous mean velocity, and into the ⟨**u**� **u**� − **b**� **b**� ⟩ expression coupled with the inhomogeneous mean magnetic feld. In this section, the cross-helicity efect in the mean magnetic-feld induction is argued. This

argument is followed by the argument of the cross-helicity evolution in Sect. [4](#page-42-0), and the cross-helicity efect in stellar dynamos in Sect. [5.](#page-60-0) The cross-helicity efect in the momentum equation will be argued in Sect. [6.](#page-68-0)

#### <span id="page-26-0"></span>**3.1 Cross‑helicity and global‑fow efect in dynamos**

The mean magnetic induction equation is written as

<span id="page-26-3"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}) + \nabla \times \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle + \eta \nabla^2 \mathbf{B},\tag{108}
$$

or equivalently

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{B} = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{U} - (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{U})\mathbf{B} + \nabla \times \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle + \eta \nabla^2 \mathbf{B}.
$$
 (109)

The first term on the right-hand side  $(r,h,s)$  of  $(109)$  $(109)$  represents the differential-rotation efect. If the mean velocity **U** is inhomogeneous along the mean magnetic feld **B**,  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U}$ , it contributes to the generation of the mean magnetic-field component in the direction of the mean velocity (Fig. [4\)](#page-26-2). This diferential-rotation efect plays an important role in dynamo process, and is called the  $\Omega$  (Omega) effect. It is considered to produce the azimuthal or toroidal component of the mean magnetic feld from the latitudinal or poloidal one (and vice versa) through the non-uniform mean velocity effect.

The second term of the r.h.s. of  $(108)$  and the third term on the r.h.s. of  $(109)$  $(109)$  $(109)$ contain the contribution of the turbulent electromotive force (EMF) defned by

<span id="page-26-1"></span>
$$
\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} \equiv \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle. \tag{110}
$$

This  $\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}}$  is the sole (direct) turbulence effect in the mean magnetic induction equation  $[(108)$  $[(108)$  $[(108)$  and  $(109)]$  $(109)]$ , and is the quantity of central importance in the turbulent dynamo study.

Unlike the mean-velocity treatment in the  $\Omega$  effect, the non-uniform or inhomogeneous mean velocity efect has been neglected in considering turbulence. As we saw in  $(13)$  $(13)$  $(13)$  and  $(14)$  $(14)$  $(14)$ , the equations of the fluctuating velocity and magnetic feld are given as

<span id="page-26-2"></span>



<span id="page-27-0"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}'}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}' = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}' + (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B} - (\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U} + \cdots, \qquad (111)
$$

<span id="page-27-1"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{b}'}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}' = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}' - (\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B} + (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U} + \cdots, \qquad (112)
$$

The evaluation of EMF is obtained from the equations of the fuctuating velocity and magnetic field  $[(111)$  $[(111)$  $[(111)$  and  $(112)]$  $(112)]$ . We multiply  $(111)$  $(111)$  and  $(112)$  by **b'** and **u'** in the vector product manner, respectively, and add them. After taking the ensemble average, we obtain the evolution equation of the ELM as

$$
\frac{DE_M^i}{Dt} = \left\langle \frac{1}{\overline{\rho}} b'^k \varepsilon^{ijk} \frac{\partial b'^j}{\partial x^\ell} - u'^k \varepsilon^{ijk} \frac{\partial u'^j}{\partial x^\ell} \right\rangle B^\ell - \left\langle u'^\ell u'^k + \frac{b'^\ell b'^k}{\mu_0 \overline{\rho}} \right\rangle \mu_0 \varepsilon^{ikj} \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^\ell} + \left\langle u'^\ell b'^k + b'^\ell u'^k \right\rangle \varepsilon^{ikj} \frac{\partial U^j}{\partial x^\ell} + \text{H.T.},
$$
\n(113)

Equation ([113\)](#page-27-2) with the inhomogeneous mean velocity or the ∇**U**-term dropped corresponds to the Ansatz that the EMF is expressed in terms of the mean magnetic feld and its derivatives such as

<span id="page-27-2"></span>
$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle^{i} = \alpha^{i\ell} B^{\ell} + \beta^{ij\ell} \frac{\partial B^{j}}{\partial x^{\ell}} + \cdots, \qquad (114)
$$

where  $\alpha^{i\ell}$  and  $\beta^{i j \ell}$  are transport coefficients. In other words, the adoption of the usual Ansatz corresponds to the assumption of the no mean velocity inhomogeneity effect in the EMF. As  $(111)$  $(111)$  and  $(112)$  $(112)$  show, the velocity and magnetic-field fluctuations depend on the large-scale inhomogeneity of the velocity. If we retain the mean velocity inhomogeneity efects, the third or ∇**U** terms should show up in the ELM expression.

In Sect. [2,](#page-6-0) we obtained the expression of the turbulent EMF ([63](#page-18-0)) in an elaborated formulation. However, to get an intuitive view of the physical origins of the dynamo efects, here we use much more simplifed arguments with assuming the simplest statistics on turbulence. If we assume that turbulent feld is homogeneous and isotropic, the two-point two-time turbulent velocity and magnetic-feld correlations are expressed in the generic form as

<span id="page-27-3"></span>
$$
\langle \phi'^{i}(\mathbf{x};t)\psi'^{j}(\mathbf{x}';t') \rangle = \langle \phi'^{i}(\mathbf{0};t)\psi'^{j}(\mathbf{r};t') \rangle
$$
  
=  $g(r;t,t')\delta^{ij} + \frac{f(r;t,t') - g(r;t,t')}{r^2}r^{i}r^{j} + h(r;t,t')\epsilon^{ij\ell}\frac{r^{\ell}}{r},$  (115)

where  $r = ||\mathbf{r}||$  with  $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x}$  is the distance between two points, and  $\phi'$  and  $\psi'$ denote either one of the velocity and magnetic feld, **u**′ and **b**′ , respectively. Here, *g*, *f*, and *h* are the longitudinal, transverse, and cross-correlation functions, respectively.

If we substitute [\(115\)](#page-27-3) with  $\phi'$  and  $\psi'$  being  $\mathbf{u}'$  and  $\mathbf{b}'$  into [\(113\)](#page-27-2), we have

$$
\frac{DE_M^i}{Dt} = \frac{1}{3} \left\{ \frac{1}{\overline{\rho}} b'^k \varepsilon^{k\ell j} \frac{\partial b'^j}{\partial x^\ell} - u'^k \varepsilon^{k\ell j} \frac{\partial u'^j}{\partial x^\ell} \right\} B^i
$$
\n
$$
- \frac{1}{3} \left\{ u'^k u'^k + \frac{b'^k b'^k}{\mu_0 \overline{\rho}} \right\} \mu_0 \varepsilon^{i\ell j} \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^\ell} + \frac{2}{3} \left\{ u'^k b'^k \right\} \varepsilon^{i\ell j} \frac{\partial U^j}{\partial x^\ell} + \text{H.T.,}
$$
\n(116)

This suggests that the EMF is expressed as

$$
\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} = \alpha \mathbf{B} - \beta \mu_0 \mathbf{J} + \gamma \Omega. \tag{117}
$$

The transport coefficients  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$  are expressed as

<span id="page-28-0"></span>
$$
\alpha = \tau_{\alpha} H,\tag{118}
$$

$$
\beta = \tau_{\beta} K,\tag{119}
$$

$$
\gamma = \tau_{\gamma} W. \tag{120}
$$

Here, *H*, *K*, and *W* are the turbulent residual helicity, the turbulent MHD energy, and the turbulent cross helicity defned by

$$
H = \langle -\mathbf{u}' \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}' + \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' / \overline{\rho} \rangle, \tag{121}
$$

$$
K = \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 + \mathbf{b}'^2 / (\mu_0 \overline{\rho}) \rangle / 2, \tag{122}
$$

$$
W = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle, \tag{123}
$$

and  $\tau_a$ ,  $\tau_\beta$ , and  $\tau_\gamma$  are the time scales associated with the turbulent residual helicity, turbulent MHD energy, and the turbulent cross helicity, respectively. Equation [\(117](#page-28-0)) shows that in the presence of the non-uniform mean velocity, the cross helicity or *W*-related term, in addition to the usual helicity or *H*-related term and the energy or *K*-related term, should be included in the expression of the EMF.

Note that more thorough and detailed expressions of the EMF can be obtained by more elaborated dynamo theories than the above simple argument with resorting to [\(113](#page-27-2)) with the homogeneous and isotropic assumption ([115\)](#page-27-3). However, the point here is that retaining the non-uniform mean velocity efects in the fuctuating velocity and magnetic feld, the turbulent cross helicity coupled with the mean vortical motion emerges in the EMF expression.

#### **3.2 Physical origins of the turbulent efects in dynamos**

If turbulence possesses some statistical properties, the efective fuxes associated with the turbulence contribute to the dynamo-related transport through the turbulent EMF in coupling with a mean-feld confguration. In the following, we scrutinize



<span id="page-29-0"></span>**Fig. 5**  $\alpha$  Effect due to the turbulent kinetic helicity

what physical processes are the essence of these turbulence effects by examining each term of the evolution equation of the velocity and magnetic-feld fuctuations. Of course, we should be cautious in the use of such an argument, since it relies on the consideration of one particular term. It may occur that other terms completely or substantially cancel the efect. However, it is true such an argument is useful to grasp a feel of the physical origin of the efect.

# **3.2.1** *˛* **Efect: kinetic‑ and current‑helicity efect**

Let us consider a fuid element fuctuating in the mean magnetic feld **B** (Fig. [5\)](#page-29-0). Here, we assume a positive kinetic helicity in turbulence,  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle > 0$ . Namely, the fluctuating velocity and magnetic feld are statistically aligned with each other. In the presence of the mean magnetic feld **B**, the velocity fuctuation associated with the fuctuating vorticity varies along **B**. Due to this **u**′ variation along the mean magnetic feld **B**, from the first term on the r.h.s. of ([112](#page-27-1)), the magnetic-field fluctuation  $\delta \mathbf{b}'$  is induced as

$$
\delta \mathbf{b}' = \tau_b(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}',\tag{124}
$$

where  $\tau_b$  is the timescale of **b**' evolution. The electromotive force (EMF) due to this efect is expressed as



<span id="page-29-1"></span>**Fig. 6**  $\alpha$  Effect due to the turbulent electric current helicity

<span id="page-30-1"></span>
$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \delta \mathbf{b}' \rangle = \tau_b \langle \mathbf{u}' \times (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}' \rangle, \tag{125}
$$

whose direction is anti-parallel to the mean magnetic feld **B** for the positive turbulent kinetic helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle > 0$ . The direction of the EMF is parallel to **B** for the negative translated in the state helicity  $\langle \mathbf{v}' \rangle \leq 0$ . negative turbulent kinetic helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}' \rangle < 0$ .<br>On the other hand, if we assume a neg

On the other hand, if we assume a positive current helicity in turbulence,  $\langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle > 0$ , the fluctuating magnetic field  $\mathbf{b}'$  is statistically aligned with the electric sympact density  $\mathbf{j}'$ . (Eig. 6). In an artimaly similar magnetic sign the turbulant linetic hali current density  $j'$  (Fig. [6\)](#page-29-1). In an entirely similar manner as in the turbulent kinetic-helicity efect mentioned above, in association with the fuctuating electric current density **j** ′ , the fuctuating magnetic feld varies along the mean magnetic feld **B**. From the frst term or  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}'$ , the fluctuating velocity  $\delta \mathbf{u}'$  is induced as

<span id="page-30-0"></span>
$$
\delta \mathbf{u}' = \tau_u(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}',\tag{126}
$$

where  $\tau_u$  is the timescale of  $\mathbf{u}'$  evolution due to this mean magnetic-field effect. In this case, we can alternatively consider the efect of the fuctuating Lorentz force  $\mathbf{j}' \times \mathbf{B}$  associated with the mean magnetic field **B**. The fluctuating velocity  $\delta \mathbf{u}'$  is induced as

<span id="page-30-2"></span>
$$
\delta \mathbf{u}' = \tau_{\mu} \mathbf{j}' \times \mathbf{B}.\tag{127}
$$

This is equivalent to [\(126](#page-30-0)). This induced velocity fluctuation  $\delta \mathbf{b}'$  combined with the fluctuating magnetic field **b'** constitutes the electromotive force as

$$
\langle \delta \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle^i = \tau_u \langle (\mathbf{j}' \times \mathbf{B}) \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle^i = \tau_u \langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle B^i.
$$
 (128)

Here, we dropped the contribution from the fuctuations along the mean magnetic field **B** as  $-\langle (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{B}) \mathbf{j}' \rangle = -\langle b'_{\parallel B} \mathbf{j}' \rangle \|\mathbf{B}\|$ , where  $b'_{\parallel B} = \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{B}/\|\mathbf{B}\|$  is the **b**′ component parallel to **B**. The direction of the EMF is parallel to the mean magnetic feld **B** for positive turbulent current helicity  $\langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle > 0$ , and is anti-parallel to **B** for negative<br>turbulent current helicity  $\langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle > 0$ . This current helicity offset on the unknown turbulent current helicity  $\langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle < 0$ . This current-helicity effect on the  $\alpha$  dynamo was first pointed out by Pouquet et al. ([1997\)](#page-95-9) on the basis of a closure calculation of MHD turbulence with the aid of the eddy-damped quasi-normal Markovianized (EDQNM) approximation. In the derivation, the timescale for the kinetic-helicity effect,  $\tau_{h}$  ([125\)](#page-30-1) and the timescale for the current-helicity effect,  $\tau_{u}$  ([128\)](#page-30-2) were not distinguished.

These physical pictures show that if the turbulent kinetic and current helicities have a sign same with each other, these two helicity effects counterbalance each other. In this sense, the current helicity in the  $\alpha$  dynamo is often argued that this magnetic correction to the  $\alpha$  dynamo represents the saturation of the  $\alpha$  dynamo due to the magnetic-feld efect. However, the sign of the current helicity can be opposite to that of the kinetic helicity. In such a case, the current-helicity efect may enhance the magnetic feld generated by the kinetic-helicity efect. In the case of inhomogeneous turbulence, which is ubiquitous in the real world, the spatiotemporal evolution of the current helicity  $\langle \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle$  depends on the production rates of the current helicity directly related to the mean-feld inhomogeneities. Actually, it is reported that, in the numerical simulation of the solar convective zone, at some deep region, the



<span id="page-31-0"></span>**Fig. 7** Turbulent magnetic difusivity due to the velocity fuctuation

magnitude of the turbulent current helicity is dominantly larger than the counterpart of the turbulent kinetic helicity. This suggests that mean magnetic feld can be generated by the current-helicity efect at the depth even in the absence of the turbulent kinetic helicity there. Such arguments should be done on the basis of the evolution equation of the kinetic and current helicities.

# **3.2.2 Turbulent magnetic difusivity: turbulent energy efect**

Let us consider a fuid element located in a mean electric current density **J** (Fig. [7\)](#page-31-0). In this case, the fuid element fuctuates in a non-uniform mean magnetic feld associated with the mean electric current density **J**. Because of the second term or  $-(\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B}$  on the r.h.s. of ([112\)](#page-27-1), the magnetic-field fluctuation  $\delta \mathbf{b}'$  is induced in the direction of the non-uniform **B** but in the sense that it counterbalances the increase of **B** as

<span id="page-31-1"></span>
$$
\delta \mathbf{b}' = -\tau_b(\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B}.
$$
 (129)

The EMF arising from the non-uniform mean magnetic feld is given by

$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \delta \mathbf{b}' \rangle^{i} = -\tau_{b} \langle \mathbf{u}' \times [(\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B}]\rangle^{i} = -\tau_{b} \langle u'^{j} u'^{\ell} \rangle \epsilon^{ijk} \frac{\partial B^{k}}{\partial x^{\ell}}.
$$
 (130)

If we assume that the velocity fluctuation is isotropic as  $\langle u^{ij} u^{i\ell} \rangle = \langle u^{i2} \rangle \delta^{i\ell} / 3$ , [\(130](#page-31-1)) is reduced to



<span id="page-31-2"></span>**Fig. 8** Turbulent magnetic difusivity due to the magnetic fuctuation

$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \delta \mathbf{b}' \rangle^i = -\frac{1}{3} \tau_b \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle e^{i\ell k} \frac{\partial B^k}{\partial x^{\ell}} = -\frac{1}{3} \tau_b \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle (\nabla \times \mathbf{B})^i. \tag{131}
$$

In the presence of velocity fuctuation, the turbulent electromotive force (EMF) due to the non-uniform mean magnetic feld ∇**B** is in the direction anti-parallel to the mean electric current density  $J(=\nabla \times \mathbf{B})$ . The transport coefficient is proportional to the intensity of fluctuation or the turbulent kinetic energy,  $\langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle$ .

In a similar manner, we argue the efect of the magnetic fuctuation on the turbulent magnetic difusivity. First we consider turbulence with magnetic-feld fuctuation **b**′ in a non-uniform mean magnetic feld **B** (Fig. [8](#page-31-2)). In the presence of the mean electric current density  $J(=\nabla \times B)$ , the fluid element is subject to the fluctuating Lorentz force associated with the mean electric current density,  $\mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{b}'$ . Then the fluctuating velocity  $\delta \mathbf{u}'$  due to **J** is induced as

<span id="page-32-0"></span>
$$
\delta \mathbf{u}' = \tau_u \mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{b}'.
$$
 (132)

The EMF due to the magnetic-feld fuctuation in the presence of **J** is expressed as

$$
\langle \delta \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle = \langle \tau_u(\mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{b}') \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle = -\tau_u \langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle \mathbf{J}.
$$
 (133)

Here, we dropped the contribution from the fuctuating magnetic-feld component parallel to the mean electric current density,  $\tau_u(\mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{J})\mathbf{b}' = \tau_u \langle b'_{\parallel} \mathbf{b}' \rangle ||\mathbf{J}||$ , where  $b'_{\parallel J} = \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{J} / \|\mathbf{J}\|$  is the fluctuating magnetic-field component along the mean electric-current density **J**. Equation ([133\)](#page-32-0) implies that the magnetic fuctuation **b**′ as well as the velocity fluctuation  $\mathbf{u}'$  contributes to the turbulent magnetic diffusivity coupled with the mean electric-current density **J**.

As for this magnetic fuctuation efect, however, we should note the following point. As we see above, in the presence of the mean electric-current density **J**, the part of fluctuating Lorentz force  $J \times b'$  induces the fluctuating velocity  $\delta u'$ , which plays a key role for the turbulent magnetic difusivity due to the fuctuating magnetic feld. However, this efect can be at least partly canceled by the other part of the fluctuating Lorentz force  $j' \times B$ . If the magnetic fluctuation has a spatial distribution like Fig. [9,](#page-32-1) the fuctuating electric-current density associated with **b**′ , Δ**j**, also shows a spatial distribution. The associated electric-current density  $\Delta j'$  is in the direction



<span id="page-32-1"></span>**Fig. 9** Cancelation of the turbulent magnetic energy efect due to the magnetic pressure efect

enhancing the original mean electric-current density **J** on the side parallel to  $J \times b'$ with respect to  $\mathbf{b}'$  (parallel side), and  $\Delta \mathbf{j}'$  in the direction reducing **J** on the side antiparallel to  $J \times b'$  (anti-parallel side). Due to this  $\Delta j'$  effect, the magnetic pressure becomes higher in the parallel side than the anti-parallel side. In other words, the velocity fluctuation  $\delta$ **u** induced by the fluctuating Lorentz force  $\Delta$ **j**'  $\times$  **B** works for increasing the plasma density on the parallel side, while the fow due to the fuctuating Lorentz force,  $\delta \mathbf{u}' = \tau_u \Delta \mathbf{j}' \times \mathbf{B}$ , works for decreasing the plasma density on the anti-parallel side. This magnetic pressure efect in the combination of the magnetic fuctuation **b**′ and the non-uniform mean magnetic feld **B**, counterbalances the effect of the Lorentz force  $J \times b'$ . In this sense, the magnetic-field fluctuations  $b'$ efect on the turbulent magnetic difusivity is not obvious as the counter part of the velocity fuctuations **u**′ . Actually, the detailed analytical calculation shows that in the solenoidal turbulence, the turbulent magnetic difusivity does not depend on the magnetic fluctuation energy  $\langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle$ . The magnetic-field fluctuation energy becomes relevant to the turbulent magnetic difusivity in the case of compressible turbulence (Yokoi [2018a](#page-96-3)) and anisotropic situations (Rogachevskii and Kleeorin [2001\)](#page-96-15).

# **3.2.3 Turbulent cross‑helicity efect**

We consider a fluid element that fluctuates in a mean vorticity field  $\Omega = \nabla \times \mathbf{U}$ (Fig. [10](#page-33-0)). We assume the turbulence has a positive cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle > 0$ , namely, the fuctuating velocity and magnetic feld are statistically aligned with each other. Because of the local angular momentum conservation, the fuid is subject to the Coriolis-like force. Then the velocity fuctuation is induced by the mean vortical motion  $\Omega$  as

<span id="page-33-1"></span>
$$
\delta \mathbf{u}' = \tau_u \mathbf{u}' \times \Omega. \tag{134}
$$

The electromotive force constituted by this induced  $\delta \mathbf{u}'$  and the fluctuating magnetic-feld component parallel to the magnetic feld **b**′ is expressed by

$$
\langle \delta \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle = \langle \tau_u(\mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{\Omega}) \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle = \tau_u(\mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}') \mathbf{\Omega}.
$$
 (135)



<span id="page-33-0"></span>Fig. 10 Turbulent cross-helicity effect due to the velocity fluctuation



<span id="page-34-0"></span>Fig. 11 Turbulent cross-helicity effect due to the magnetic fluctuation

Here, we dropped the contribution from the magnetic fuctuations along the mean vorticity  $-\tau_u \langle \mathbf{u}'(\mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}) \rangle = -\tau_u \langle b_{\parallel \Omega} \rangle ||\mathbf{\Omega}||$ , where  $b'_{\parallel \Omega}$  is the **b**' component parallel to  $\Omega$  defined by **b** $\theta' \cdot \Omega / \|\Omega\|$  since the statistical average of  $b'_{\|\Omega}\mathbf{u}'$  is expected to vanish. Equation [\(135](#page-33-1)) suggests that EMF due to the cross helicity is aligned with the mean vorticity  $\Omega$ . The direction of EMF is determined by the sign of the turbulent cross helicity. The EMF is parallel to the mean vorticity  $\Omega$  for positive turbulent cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle > 0$ , and anti-parallel to  $\Omega$  for negative turbulent cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle < 0.$ 

Next, we consider motion of a fluid element with magnetic fluctuations **b**<sup>'</sup> in a non-uniform mean velocity ∇**U** (Fig. [11](#page-34-0)). Also in this case, we assume the cross helicity in turbulence is positive  $(\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle)$ ; the turbulent velocity **u**' and turbulent measuring field  $\mathbf{b}'$  are assisting the string density of property in the set of the  $\mathbf{W}_i$  are from magnetic field **b'** are statistically aligned and parallel with each other. We see from the third term or  $\tau_b(\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla)$ **U** on the r.h.s. of Eq. [\(111](#page-27-0)) that the magnetic fluctuation  $\delta$ **b**<sup> $\prime$ </sup> is induced as

<span id="page-34-3"></span><span id="page-34-2"></span><span id="page-34-1"></span>
$$
\delta \mathbf{b}' = \tau_b(\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U}.
$$
 (136)

This induced magnetic fluctuation  $\delta \mathbf{b}'$  is in the direction parallel to **U** if the non-uniform **U** increases as the fuctuating magnetic feld **b**′ moves. Multiplying the fuctuating velocity **u**′ in the vector product manner by Eq. ([136\)](#page-34-1) and taking the ensemble averaging, we obtain

$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \delta \mathbf{b}' \rangle^i = \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \tau_b(\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U} \rangle^i = \left\langle e^{ijk} u'^j \tau_b b'^\ell \frac{\partial U^k}{\partial x^\ell} \right\rangle = \tau_b \langle u'^j b'^\ell \rangle e^{ijk} \frac{\partial U^k}{\partial x^\ell}.
$$
\n(137)

If we assume the velocity and magnetic-feld correlation is isotropic as  $\langle u^{ij}b^{i\ell}\rangle = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle \delta^{j\ell}/3$ , ([137\)](#page-34-2) is reduced to

$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \delta \mathbf{b}' \rangle^{i} = \tau_b \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle \epsilon^{ijk} \frac{\partial U^k}{\partial x^j} = \tau_b \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle (\nabla \times \mathbf{U})^i = \tau_b \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle \Omega^i. \tag{138}
$$

Since the mean vorticity  $\Omega = \nabla \times \mathbf{U}$  is locally equivalent to the angular velocity of a rotation  $\omega_F = \Omega/2$ , exactly the same argument can be applied to the fluid element in

a rotating system. Hence, we can replace the mean vorticity  $\Omega$  by the mean absolute vorticity  $\Omega_* \equiv \Omega + 2\omega_F$ .

Equations [\(133\)](#page-32-0) and ([138](#page-34-3)) show that in the presence of the mean absolute vorticity  $\Omega_*$ , the turbulent electromotive force (EMF) is expressed as

$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle_{\gamma} = \gamma \Omega_{*},\tag{139}
$$

where  $\gamma$  is the transport coefficient determined by the turbulent cross helicity and turbulence timescale related to the cross helicity,  $\tau_{\gamma}$ , expressed by

$$
\gamma = \tau_{\gamma} \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle, \tag{140}
$$

and  $\Omega_*$ <sup>is the mean absolute vorticity defined by</sup>

$$
\Omega_* \equiv \Omega + 2\omega_F \tag{141}
$$

with the mean relative vorticity  $\Omega = \nabla \times \mathbf{U}$  and the angular velocity of the system rotation  $\omega_{\rm F}$ .

#### **3.3 Numerical validation of cross‑helicity efect**

#### **3.3.1 Kolmogorov fow with imposed uniform magnetic feld**

To validate the cross-helicity efect in dynamo problems, we performed a direct numerical simulation (DNS) of forced magnetohydrodynamic (MHD) turbulence in a threedimensional periodic box with a uniform magnetic feld imposed (Fig. [12](#page-35-0)) (Yokoi and Balarac [2011](#page-96-16)). The size of the box is  $(L_x, L_y, L_z)$ . The imposed forcing is in the *x* direction:

$$
\mathbf{f}_{ext} = (f^x, f^y, f^z) = (f^x, 0, 0)
$$
\n(142)

and is inhomogeneous in the *y* direction:



<span id="page-35-0"></span>**Fig. 12** Kolmogorov fow with imposed uniform magnetic feld. The triple periodic confguration with the imposed uniform magnetic feld in the direction of inhomogeneity (*y* direction) (left). Sinusoidal forcing for inhomogeneous velocity shear (middle). The contour of the streamwise velocity (right)
<span id="page-36-0"></span>
$$
f^{x}(y) = f_0 \sin\left(\frac{2\pi y}{L_y}\right). \tag{143}
$$

In this setup, turbulence is generated and sustained by the velocity shear due to the sinusoidal forcing  $(142)$  $(142)$  with  $(143)$  $(143)$ . Because of the forcing, the statistics of the turbulence is inhomogeneous in the *y* direction, but is homogeneous in the *x* and *z* directions. The statistics of quantities are represented by averaging in the homogeneous  $(x-z)$  directions. This configuration is known as the Kolmogorov turbulent fow. To see the turbulence properties related to dynamo and its transport, we further impose a uniform mean magnetic feld in the inhomogeneous direction, namely in the *y* direction as

$$
\mathbf{B}_0 = (B_0^x, B_0^y, B_0^z) = (0, B_0, 0). \tag{144}
$$

The contour of the streamwise velocity is shown in Fig. [12.](#page-35-1) Refecting the sinusoidal form of the forcing ([142\)](#page-35-0), the value of the streamwise velocity component is positive and negative in the upper half domain ( $y > 0$ ) and lower half domain ( $y < 0$ ), respectively.

The situation of Kolmogorov flow may be unrealistic in that it is difficult to experimentally realize such a periodic forcing confguration [\(143](#page-36-0)) in an unbounded fow. Nevertheless, it is very useful to examine the statistical properties of threedimensional turbulence with inhomogeneity and anisotropy. The statistical properties of turbulence in Kolmogorov fow depend on several computational conditions (Sarris et al. [2007\)](#page-96-0). To make quantitative analyses, we have to scrutinize numerical conditions including the Reynolds number dependence, aspect ration of the simulation box, strength of the imposed magnetic feld, etc. In addition, we have to take care of the characteristic length scales along and perpendicular to the imposed magnetic feld in comparison with the domain size. However, here we focus on the basic role of cross helicity in electromotive force. We only consider a situation of a cubic box with the numerical discretisation of  $256<sup>3</sup>$ . The strength of imposed magnetic feld is 10% of the maximum of streamwise velocity generated by the sinusoidal forcing ([143\)](#page-36-0) in the case of no imposed magnetic feld. In the following, in addition to spatial averaging in the homogeneous (*x* and *z*) directions, ensemble averaging over 70 independent realizations in time is taken.

With this setup, we calculate the turbulent correlations and the mean-feld quantities that are relevant to the mean-feld dynamo. The expression of the turbulent electromotive force (EMF) is theoretically obtained in Sect. [2](#page-6-0), and modeled as

<span id="page-36-1"></span>
$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle = \alpha \mathbf{B} - \beta \mathbf{J} + \gamma \Omega, \tag{145}
$$

where the transport coefficients  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$  are expressed in terms of the turbulent residual helicity, the turbulent energy, and the turbulent cross helicity.

As [\(145](#page-36-1)) shows, the relevant mean felds are the mean magnetic feld **B**, the mean electric-current density  $J(=\nabla \times B)$ , and the mean relative vorticity  $\Omega = \nabla \times U$ . On the other hand, the relevant turbulent correlations are the turbulent MHD energy *K*, its dissipation rate  $\varepsilon_K(\equiv \varepsilon)$ , the turbulent residual helicity *H*, and the turbulent cross helicity *W*. They are defned by

$$
K = \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 + \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle / 2, \tag{146}
$$

$$
\varepsilon_K = v \left\langle \left( \frac{\partial u'^j}{\partial x^i} \right)^2 \right\rangle + \eta \left\langle \left( \frac{\partial b'^j}{\partial x^i} \right)^2 \right\rangle \equiv \varepsilon, \tag{147}
$$

$$
H = \langle -\mathbf{u}' \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}' + \mathbf{b}' \cdot \mathbf{j}' \rangle, \tag{148}
$$

$$
W = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle. \tag{149}
$$

In terms of these turbulent statistical quantities, the main dynamo transport coeffcients are expressed as

<span id="page-37-0"></span>
$$
\alpha = \tau H,\tag{150}
$$

$$
\beta = \tau K,\tag{151}
$$

$$
\gamma = \tau W, \tag{152}
$$

where  $\tau$  is the timescale of turbulence evaluated by

<span id="page-37-1"></span>
$$
\tau = K/\varepsilon. \tag{153}
$$



<span id="page-37-2"></span>**Fig. 13** Comparison of the turbulent electromotive force (EMF) with the model terms,  $\alpha$ **B**,  $\beta$ **J**, and  $\gamma \Omega$ in Kolmogorov fow with imposed uniform magnetic feld. The spatial distribution with respect to the inhomogeneous direction (*y* direction) of  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle^x$  (black) is compared with the  $\alpha B^x$  (green),  $\beta J^x$  (blue), and  $\gamma \Omega^x$  (red)

 $\mathcal{D}$  Springer

Using the DNS results, we plot the spatial (*y*) distribution of the *x* component of the EMF  $\langle$ **u'**  $\times$  **b'**) as well as each term of the r.h.s. of Eq. ([145\)](#page-36-1),  $\alpha$ **B**,  $\beta$ **J**, and  $\gamma$ **Q** with (150), (152) in Fig. 12. The DNS of the FME  $\langle x \rangle \times$ **b**<sup> $\ell$ </sup>*N* abous a sinusoidal distri [\(150](#page-37-0))–[\(153](#page-37-1)) in Fig. [13](#page-37-2). The DNS of the EMF  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle^x$  shows a sinusoidal distri-<br>button in the *u* direction, positive values for  $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{0}$  and positive values for  $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{0}$ . bution in the *y* direction; negative values for  $y < 0$  and positive values for  $y > 0$ . Among the model terms, the contribution of the  $(\alpha \mathbf{B})^x$  is almost negligible in the whole domain as compared with the other terms,  $-\beta J$  and  $\gamma \Omega$ . On the other hand, the turbulent diffusivity  $\beta$ **J** term plays a dominant role in constituting of the EMF. The spatial (*y*) distribution of  $-\beta J$  is coarsely sinusoidal; negative for  $y < 0$  and positive for *y* > 0. The main balancer for the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $-\beta J$  is the crosshelicity effect  $\gamma \Omega$ . Its spatial distribution is basically positive for  $y < 0$  and negative for  $y > 0$ . It is very notable that the spatial distribution of the sum of the turbulent magnetic diffusivity and the cross-helicity effect,  $-\beta \mathbf{J} + \gamma \mathbf{\Omega}$ , roughly agrees with the counterpart of the EMF  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$ . This DNS result shows that, in this configuration, the turbulent EMF is constituted by the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $\beta$ **J** and the cross-helicity effect  $\gamma \Omega$ , and that the turbulent helicity or  $\alpha$  effect does not play any substantial role in the turbulent transport. The profle of the EMF, whose sign is opposite to that of  $\gamma \Omega$ , is similar to the counterpart of the  $\beta J$ . This indicates that, in this simulation, the turbulent EMF as a whole works for enhancing the efective diffusivity, not for dynamo. However, it is worth noting that the increased transport or the field destruction by the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $\beta$ **J** is certainly suppressed by the dynamo or feld-generation/sustainment efect by the cross helicity.

As mentioned above, in the current simulations, in addition to the spatial averaging in the homogeneous directions, ensemble averaging over 70 independent realizations is taken. However, each realization shows large spatial variations. This is one of the main reasons why the spatial distributions of each term of the r.h.s. of [\(145](#page-36-1))



<span id="page-38-0"></span>**Fig. 14** Spatial distributions of turbulent cross helicity and its production rate and transport rate terms in the Kolmogorov flow. Turbulent cross helicity *W* divided by turbulence timescale  $\tau (= K/\varepsilon)$ : — *W*/ $\tau$ ; production rate due to  $\nabla \mathbf{B}$ : … …  $-\mathcal{R}^{ab}(\partial B^b/\partial x^a)$ ; production rate due to  $\Omega$ : - - -  $-\mathbf{E}_M \cdot \Omega$ ; and transport rate due to turbulence inhomogeneity along **B**: <sup>−</sup> <sup>⋅</sup> <sup>−</sup>(**<sup>B</sup>** <sup>⋅</sup> ∇)*<sup>K</sup>*

still show large spatial variations including the disagreement of the positions of null points in Fig. [13](#page-37-2). To get more smooth statistics, we have to take larger statistical ensembles.

Turbulent cross helicity  $W = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  is an essential ingredient for this dynamo buttom of surplust are a helicity will be disor buttery efect. Although the evolution of turbulent cross helicity will be discussed later in Sect. [4](#page-42-0), here we present the spatial distribution of turbulent cross helicity and its generation mechanisms in the Kolmogorov fow. In this simulation, *W* is not injected by external forcing but is self-generated by the production and transport rates,  $P_W$  ([162](#page-43-0)) and  $T_W$  ([164](#page-44-0)), in the evolution equation of *W* ([158](#page-43-1)). They are originated from inhomogeneities of mean felds **B** and **U**, or inhomogeneity of turbulence along the mean magnetic feld. We plot the spatial distributions of *W* and the production rates,  $-\mathcal{R}$  :  $\nabla$ **B** and  $-\mathbf{E}_{\text{M}} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}$ , and the transport rate  $\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla K$  in Fig. [14](#page-38-0). This shows that the spatial distribution of *W* reflect those of  $P_W$  [− $\mathcal{R}^{ab}(\partial B^b/\partial x^a)$  and  $-\mathbf{E}_M \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}$ ] and  $T_W$  [( $\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla$ )*K*]. Among these crosshelicity generation mechanisms, the production rate due to mean vorticity  $\Omega$ ,  $-\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} \sim +\beta \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}$ , is the largest in the current setup. This production is caused by the coupling between mean electric-current density  $J$  and mean vorticity  $\Omega$ . Detailed description of this generation mechanism will be given in Sect. [4.2.2.](#page-47-0)

This numerical validation is suggestive for the interpretation of the result of a dynamo experiment. In the liquid sodium dynamo experiment, the turbulent EMF  $\langle u' \times b' \rangle$  was for the first time directly measured by simultaneously measur-<br>in a three comparation of the unlastituted measured a field (Debhamic at al. 2012) ing three components of the velocity and magnetic feld (Rahbarnia et al. [2012](#page-96-1)).



<span id="page-39-0"></span>**Fig.** 15 Comparison of the measured turbulent electromotive force (EMF) with the dynamo terms,  $\alpha$ **B** and  $\beta$ **J** dynamo experiment. The spatial distribution with respect to the inhomogeneous direction (*y* direction) of  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  (black) is compared with the  $\alpha B$  (green) and  $\beta J$  (blue). Redrawn from Rahbarnia et al. [\(2012](#page-96-1))

By comparing with the mean electric-current density term, it was shown that the EMF tends to oppose the local mean electric current, and that the mean magnetic feld **B** tends to be perpendicular to the direction of the EMF. This experimental result also suggests that the helicity or  $\alpha$  effect, expressed by  $\alpha$ **B**, does not contribute to the turbulent EMF. This experimental result is consistent with the numerical result of the turbulent transport (Fig. [15](#page-39-0)) showing the dominance of the turbulent magnetic diffusivity and the irrelevance of the helicity or  $\alpha$  effect in dynamo action. We should note that in this liquid sodium experiment, a largescale rotational or poloidal motion is also observed. Since there exists a mean vortical motion and the three-dimensional data of velocity and magnetic feld are measured, it is interesting to re-examine the efect of the turbulent cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  which couples with the mean vortical motion  $\Omega (= \nabla \times \mathbf{U})$  as  $\gamma \Omega$ .

## **3.3.2 Archontis fow**

Another numerical validation was performed in the Archontis fow confguration, which is a generalization of the Arnold–Beltrami–Childress fow but with the cosine terms omitted (Sur and Brandenburg [2009\)](#page-96-2). As the result of this setup, the Archontis fow confguration is a non-helical one, and suitable to explore the dynamo due to the cross-helicity efect. A net cross helicity with either sign is generated by an instability, and the sign of the cross helicity depends on the initial condition. The direct numerical simulations of this fow show that the cross helicity contributes to inducing a large-scale magnetic feld with exponential growth. It turns out that to evaluate the cross-helicity efect in dynamo, the meanfeld efect should be also considered. This naturally leads us to explore the problem how and how much turbulent cross helicity is generated by the efects of the mean felds. This is the subject of Sect. [4.](#page-42-0)

#### **3.3.3 Cross‑helicity and diferential‑rotation efect in spherical shell**

In Sect. [3.1](#page-26-0), we argued the cross-helicity and global-fow efect in dynamos. We saw the treatment of global-fow inhomogeneity is fairly diferent between the  $\Omega$  (differential rotation) effect and turbulence. If we consider the velocity shear efect also in turbulence, the cross-helicity efect inevitably shows up. Since both the  $\Omega$  effect and the cross-helicity effect depend on the inhomogeneous largescale fow, the relative importance of these efects in the magnetic feld generation process is an interesting subject of the cross-helicity efect in dynamos.

The spatial distributions of the total, mean, and fuctuating cross helicities in the direct numerical simulation of a spherical shell mimicking the Sun are plotted in contour in Fig. [16.](#page-41-0) Here, the total cross helicity is calculated using the instantaneous velocity and magnetic felds, the mean cross helicity is calculated under the azimuthal averaging, and the fuctuating cross helicity is calculated by subtraction of the mean cross helicity from the total one. The spatial distributions of cross helicity are basically antisymmetric with respect to the midplane. This refects pseudo-scalar property of cross helicity. We also see the signs of the



<span id="page-41-0"></span>**Fig. 16** Spatial distribution of the cross helicity in the meridional surface. The total cross helicity (left), the mean cross helicity (middle), and the fuctuating cross helicity (right). Provided by Mark Miesch

mean and fuctuating cross helicity in each hemisphere are opposite each other. This is not unreasonable since the cross helicity is not a positive-defnite quantity and its sign can be altered in scale.

As will be referred to in Sect. [4](#page-42-0), we have the transport equations of the turbulent and mean-feld cross helicities. Comparison of the numerical data of the cross helicity with the production, dissipation, and transport rates of the turbulent and mean-feld cross helicities in the global simulation of the spherical shell



<span id="page-41-1"></span>**Fig. 17** Relative magnitude of the cross-helicity effect  $\|\nabla \times (\gamma \nabla \times \mathbf{U})\|$  to the differential-rotation effect ‖∇×(**<sup>U</sup>** <sup>×</sup> **<sup>B</sup>**)‖. Here, *R* is the radius of the Sun, and *r* is the radial coordinate. Provided by Mark Miesch

geometry would give a way to understand the physical mechanisms that determine the spatiotemporal distribution of the turbulent cross helicity.

Next we evaluate the relative importance of cross-helicity efect to the diferential rotation efect in the mean induction equation by calculating

<span id="page-42-1"></span>
$$
\frac{\text{(Cross-helicity effect)}}{\text{(Differential-rotation effect)}} = \frac{\|\nabla \times (\gamma \nabla \times \mathbf{U})\|}{\|\nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B})\|}.
$$
 (154)

This ratio is plotted against the radius *r* in Fig. [17](#page-41-1). This plot implies that the relative importance of the cross-helicity efect to the diferential-rotation efect is negligibly small in the deeper region (0.7  $\lt r/R \le 0.85$ ), but it becomes  $\sim 0.5$  in the upper middle layer (0.85  $\leq r/R \leq 0.96$ ). This ratio raises to unity and much more higher in the near surface layer (0.96  $\leq r/R$ ). This increase is because the largescale vorticity becomes much stronger in the near surface layer. This result shows that the cross-helicity efect is comparable to the diferential-rotation efect, and is not negligible in the upper middle layer of the Sun. This result further suggests that, in the near surface layer, the cross-helicity efect plays a dominant role in the mean magnetic-feld induction.

The ratio  $(154)$  $(154)$  may be estimated as

$$
\frac{\|\nabla \times (\gamma \nabla \times \mathbf{U})\|}{\|\nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B})\|} \sim \frac{\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle}{D(\partial U/\partial r)B'} \frac{\tau_{\text{turb}}}{\tau_{\text{mean}}} \sim \frac{\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle}{\delta U B'} R o^{-1} = \frac{\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle}{\delta U B'} \frac{K}{E} \frac{(155)}{D/\delta U},
$$

where *D* is the depth of the convection zone,  $B^r$  the poloidal magnetic field,  $\delta U$ the magnitude of velocity diferential rotation, *Ro* the Rossby number. This suggests that the relative importance of the cross-helicity to the diferential rotation can be evaluated by the value of the turbulent cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  and the eddy turnover time  $\tau_{\text{turb}}(= K/\epsilon)$ , as well as the observable quantities such as the differential rotation velocity  $\delta U$ , the poloidal magnetic field  $B<sup>r</sup>$ , and the depth of the convection zone *D*. The evaluation of this ratio in several simulation conditions may be interesting subject to explore.

# <span id="page-42-0"></span>**4 Evolution of turbulent cross helicity**

In the previous section, we saw that in the presence of cross helicity in turbulence, a mean absolute vorticity (rotation and mean relative vorticity) associated with the non-uniform mean velocity can produce the electromotive force. However, how much cross helicity is present in turbulence is another problem. In this section, we will examine how the turbulent cross helicity is generated by considering the evolution equation of it.

### **4.1 Evolution equation of cross helicity**

As is well known, the total amount of the cross helicity  $\int_V \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{b} dV$ , as well as the total amount of the MHD energy  $\int_V(\mathbf{u}^2 + \mathbf{b}^2)/2dV$  and the counterpart of the magnetic helicity  $\int_V \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} dV$ , is an inviscid invariant of the incompressible MHD equations, where magnetic feld is measured with the Alfvén speed unit as **b** = **b**<sub>\*</sub>/( $\mu_0 \rho$ )<sup>1/2</sup> ( $\mu_0$ : magnetic permeability,  $\rho$ : mass density), **a** is the magnetic potential, and  $\int_V$  denotes the integral throughout the volume considered, *V*.

We defne the local density of the turbulent MHD energy and cross helicity as

$$
K \equiv \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 + \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle / 2,\tag{156}
$$

<span id="page-43-1"></span>
$$
W \equiv \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle, \tag{157}
$$

respectively. Due to the conservation property of the total amount of the MHD energy and cross helicity, the evolution equations of the turbulent MHD energy density *K* and the turbulent cross helicity density *W* are written in a very simple form as

$$
\frac{DF}{Dt} = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla\right) F = P_F - \varepsilon_F + T_F,\tag{158}
$$

where  $F = (K \text{ or } W)$ . In [\(158](#page-43-1)),  $P_F$ ,  $\varepsilon_F$ ,  $T_F$  are the production, dissipation, and transport rates of *F*, respectively. The production rate  $P_F$  arises from the coupling of the turbulent correlations and the mean-feld inhomogeneities. The dissipation rate of  $F, \varepsilon_F$ , comes from the molecular viscosity and magnetic diffusivity or some alternatives such as wave interaction. The transport rate  $T_F$  represents fluxes through the boundary. In the case of conservation-related quantities, such fuxes are written in a divergence form.

The production, dissipation, and transport rates of the turbulent MHD energy *K* and turbulent cross helicity *W* are expressed as

<span id="page-43-3"></span><span id="page-43-2"></span>
$$
P_K = -\mathcal{R}^{ij}\frac{\partial U^j}{\partial x^i} - \mathbf{E}_M \cdot \mathbf{J},\tag{159}
$$

$$
\varepsilon_K = v \left\langle \left( \frac{\partial u^{ij}}{\partial x^i} \right)^2 \right\rangle + \eta \left\langle \left( \frac{\partial b^{ij}}{\partial x^i} \right)^2 \right\rangle \equiv \varepsilon, \tag{160}
$$

$$
T_K = \mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla W + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{T}_K' \equiv T_K^{(B)} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{T}_K',\tag{161}
$$

<span id="page-43-4"></span><span id="page-43-0"></span>
$$
P_W = -\mathcal{R}^{ij}\frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^i} - \mathbf{E}_M \cdot \mathbf{\Omega},\tag{162}
$$

<span id="page-44-5"></span>
$$
\varepsilon_W = (\nu + \eta) \left\langle \frac{\partial u'^j}{\partial x^i} \frac{\partial b'^j}{\partial x^i} \right\rangle, \tag{163}
$$

$$
T_W = \mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla K + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{T}'_W \equiv T_W^{(B)} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{T}'_W,\tag{164}
$$

where  $\mathcal{R} = \{ \mathcal{R}^{ij} \}$  is the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses defined by

<span id="page-44-0"></span>
$$
\mathcal{R}^{ij} = \langle u'^i u'^j - b'^i b'^j \rangle,\tag{165}
$$

and  $\mathbf{E}_{\text{M}}$  is the turbulent electromotive force (EMF) defined by ([110\)](#page-26-1).

The production rates  $P_K$  and  $P_W$  are, respectively, related to the transfer of the turbulent MHD energy and cross helicity between the large and small scales. This point is clearly seen if we write the evolution equations of the mean-field MHD energy  $K$  and the mean-field cross helicity  $W$  defined by

$$
\mathcal{K} = (\mathbf{U}^2 + \mathbf{B}^2)/2,\tag{166}
$$

<span id="page-44-3"></span><span id="page-44-1"></span>
$$
\mathcal{W} = \mathbf{U} \cdot \mathbf{B},\tag{167}
$$

respectively. The equations of  $K$  and  $W$  are written as

$$
\frac{D\mathcal{F}}{Dt} \equiv \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla\right) \mathcal{F} = P_{\mathcal{F}} - \varepsilon_{\mathcal{F}} + T_{\mathcal{F}},\tag{168}
$$

$$
P_{\mathcal{K}} = +\mathcal{R}^{ij}\frac{\partial U^j}{\partial x^i} + \mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} \cdot \mathbf{J} = -P_K,\tag{169}
$$

$$
\varepsilon_{\mathcal{K}} = \nu \left\langle \left( \frac{\partial U^j}{\partial x^i} \right)^2 \right\rangle + \eta \left\langle \left( \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^i} \right)^2 \right\rangle, \tag{170}
$$

$$
T_{\mathcal{K}} = \mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{W} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{T}'_{\mathcal{K}} \equiv T_{\mathcal{W}}^{(B)} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{T}'_{\mathcal{K}},\tag{171}
$$

$$
P_{\mathcal{W}} = +\mathcal{R}^{ij} \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^i} + \mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} = -P_W,\tag{172}
$$

<span id="page-44-4"></span><span id="page-44-2"></span>
$$
\varepsilon_{\mathcal{W}} = (\nu + \eta) \left\langle \frac{\partial U^j}{\partial x^i} \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^i} \right\rangle, \tag{173}
$$

$$
T_{\mathcal{W}} = \mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{K} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{T}'_{\mathcal{W}} \equiv T_{\mathcal{W}}^{(B)} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{T}'_{\mathcal{W}}.
$$
 (174)

Equations ([169\)](#page-44-1) and ([172\)](#page-44-2) show that the production rates of the mean-feld MHD energy  $K$  and the mean-field cross helicity  $W$  are exactly the same as the counterpart of the turbulent MHD energy  $K(159)$  $K(159)$  $K(159)$  and the turbulent cross helicity  $W(162)$  $W(162)$ ,

but with the opposite signs. Due to this consequence, these production terms do not contribute to the total amount of that quantity; the sum of the turbulent and meanfield quantities,  $K + K$  and  $W + W$ . They contribute just to the transfer of the quantity between the mean and turbulent components. If the sign of the production of a turbulent quantity is positive (or negative), the turbulent quantity increases (or decreases). At the same time, in this case, the sign of the mean-feld counterpart is negative (or positive) and the mean-feld quantity decreases (or increases). This means that the generation of the turbulent quantity arising from the positive production rate is supplied by the drain or sink of the mean-feld counterpart. In this sense, production rates of K and W,  $P_K$  and  $P_W$ , represent the cascade properties of the turbulent MHD energy and cross helicity.

The dissipation rates of the mean-field MHD energy and cross helicity,  $\epsilon_K$ [\(170\)](#page-44-3) and  $\epsilon_W$  ([173](#page-44-4)), are the counterparts of  $\epsilon_K$  ([160](#page-43-3)) and  $\epsilon_W$  [\(163\)](#page-44-5). The molecular viscosity  $\nu$  and the magnetic diffusivity  $\eta$  coupled with the mean-field inhomogeneities ∇**U** and ∇**B** lead to the dissipation. As compared with the inhomogeneities in small scales,  $\nabla$ **u**' and  $\nabla$ **b**', these large-scale inhomogeneities are considered to be small. However, in the region where the large-scale feld inhomogeneities are fairly large, such as near-wall region and shock vicinity, these dissipation rates associated with the mean-feld inhomogeneities can be considerably large and not negligible.

Like the turbulent counterparts  $T_K$  and  $T_W$ , the transport rates of the mean-field quantities,  $T_K$  and  $T_W$  represent the flux through the boundary. The first terms in  $T_K$  [\(161\)](#page-43-4) and  $T_W$  ([164](#page-44-0)) are originally written in a divergence form as

<span id="page-45-0"></span>
$$
T_K^{(\mathbf{B})} = \nabla \cdot (W\mathbf{B}) = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)W,\tag{175}
$$

<span id="page-45-2"></span>
$$
T_W^{(\mathbf{B})} = \nabla \cdot (K\mathbf{B}) = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K. \tag{176}
$$

However, to explicitly show that they are related to the turbulence inhomogeneities along the mean magnetic feld, they are written as the frst terms of ([161\)](#page-43-4) and ([164\)](#page-44-0).

The first term of [\(161\)](#page-43-4) or ([175\)](#page-45-0),  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)W$ , is linked to the Alfvén wave propagating along a mean magnetic feld **B**. In terms of the Alfvén wave, a positive



<span id="page-45-1"></span>**Fig. 18** Energy generation due to inhomogeneity of turbulent cross helicity and asymmetry of Alfvén wave propagation

cross helicity  $W > 0$  represents a dominance of the counter propagating Alfvén waves (Alfvén wave propagating in the direction anti-parallel to the mean magnetic feld). Let us consider a domain bounded by two surfaces (Fig. [18](#page-45-1)): one is the surface of the upstream direction with respect to the mean magnetic feld (up-fux boundary) and the other is the surface of the downstream direction (down-fux boundary). If the magnitude of the turbulent cross helicity increases along the mean magnetic field (down-flux) direction as  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)W > 0$ , the counterpropagating Alfvén waves are more dominant in the down-fux boundary of **B** than the up-fux boundary. This means that the infux Alfvén waves at the downfux boundary are more dominant than the outfux Alfvén waves at the up-fux boundary. As this consequence, the total energy infux due to the Alfvén waves is positive in the bounded domain, leading to the increase of the turbulent MHD energy. A similar argument applies for the case of negative turbulent cross helicity (dominance of the Alfvén waves propagating in the direction parallel to **B**). These arguments show that the turbulent energy increases in the region where  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)W > 0$  and decreases in the region where  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)W < 0$ .

#### <span id="page-46-2"></span>**4.2 Generation mechanisms of turbulent cross helicity**

The evolution equation of the turbulent cross helicity  $W = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  shows that *W* can be leaded in general in game situations where the turbulant flux and the large can be locally generated in some situations where the turbulent fux and the largescale structure of the mean feld are coupled each other. It follows from ([159](#page-43-2)) and [\(161\)](#page-43-4) that there are two categories in the mechanisms of the turbulent cross-helicity generation. One is originated from the production rate  $P_W$  ([159\)](#page-43-2) and the other arises from the transport rate  $T_W$  ([161](#page-43-4)). The production rate  $P_W$  is divided into the two parts due to the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stress  $\mathcal R$  and the one due to the turbulent electromotive force  $\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}}$  as

$$
P_W = P_W^{(\text{R})} + P_W^{(\text{E})},\tag{177}
$$

where

<span id="page-46-0"></span>
$$
P_W^{(R)} = -\mathcal{R}_R^{ij} \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^i},\tag{178}
$$

<span id="page-46-1"></span>
$$
P_W^{(E)} = -\mathbf{E}_M \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}.\tag{179}
$$

### **4.2.1 Cross‑helicity generation by velocity and magnetic‑feld strains**

If expression for the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses is substituted into  $P_W^{(R)}$  [\(178\)](#page-46-0), we have

$$
P_W^{(\mathcal{R})} = +v_{\mathcal{K}} S^{ij} \mathcal{M}^{ij} - v_{\mathcal{M}} (\mathcal{M}^{ij})^2.
$$
 (180)



<span id="page-47-1"></span>**Fig. 19** Cross-helicity generation due to mean velocity and magnetic-feld strains

Since  $-\mathcal{M}^2$  < 0, the second or  $v_M$ -related term always contributes to reduce the magnitude of the turbulent cross helicity. The first or  $v<sub>K</sub>$ -related term may work for increasing the turbulent cross helicity. Since the turbulent or eddy viscosity is always positive ( $v_K > 0$ ), the production of turbulent cross helicity depends on the sign of  $\mathcal{S}: \mathcal{M} = \{S^{ij} \mathcal{M}^{ij}\}\$ . If the sign of  $\mathcal{S}: \mathcal{M} > 0$ , a positive cross helicity is generated, while  $\mathcal{S}: \mathcal{M} < 0$ , a negative turbulent cross helicity is generated as

$$
\begin{cases}\nP_W^{(R)} > 0 \quad \text{for } \mathcal{S} : \mathcal{M} > 0, \\
P_W^{(R)} < 0 \quad \text{for } \mathcal{S} : \mathcal{M} < 0.\n\end{cases} \tag{181}
$$

This cross-helicity generation mechanism works when the momentum is injected with a velocity shear to the confguration with a mean magnetic-feld shear. The neutral beam injection (NBI) in the toroidal direction in a fusion device may be the case of this turbulence cross-helicity generation. If the neutral beam is externally injected in the central minor axis region, the turbulent cross helicity at the outer half (far side) may be positive, while the turbulent cross helicity at the inner half region (near side) is negative (Fig. [19\)](#page-47-1).

## <span id="page-47-0"></span>**4.2.2 Cross‑helicity generation by vorticity and electric current**

If we substitute the expression for the turbulent EMF [\(117](#page-28-0)) into the production rate  $P_W^{(E)}$  $(179)$ , we have

<span id="page-47-2"></span>
$$
P_W^{(E)} = +\beta \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} - \alpha \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} - \gamma \mathbf{\Omega}^2. \tag{182}
$$

The third or  $\gamma$ -related term always work for decreasing the magnitude of the cross helicity, *W* or  $\gamma = \tau W$ ) since  $-\Omega^2 < 0$ . The second or *α*-related term suggests the increase or decrease of the turbulent cross helicity due to the magnetic feld generated by the  $\alpha$  effect. Depending on the sign of the turbulent residual helicity  $\alpha (= \tau H)$ coupled with the mean-field structure  $\mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}$ , the turbulent cross helicity is generated or destroyed by the  $\alpha$  effect. This interaction between the cross helicity and helicity plays an important role in the oscillations and reversal of the magnetic feld



<span id="page-48-0"></span>**Fig. 20** Cross-helicity generation due to mean vorticity  $\Omega$  (poloidal rotation) and mean electric-current density **J** (toroidal plasma current)

and the cross helicity. This point will be argued in more detail in the cross-helicity dynamo in oscillatory magnetic field in stars in Sect. [5](#page-60-0). The first or  $\beta$ -related term is expected to play the central role in the cross-helicity generation since the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $\beta$  exists even without any breakage of mirror-symmetry linked to  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$ , and represents the primary effect of turbulence. Since the turbulent magnetic diffusivity is always positive  $(\beta > 0)$ , the sign of the cross-helicity generation is determined by the sign of  $J \cdot \Omega$ . In cylindrical plasma configuration, which is often adopted as an approximation of toroidal plasma confguration, the poloidal plasma rotation is represented by the azimuthal or axial mean vorticity  $\Omega$ , and the toroidal plasma current is represented by the azimuthal or axial mean electric current **J** (Fig. [20\)](#page-48-0). Whether positive or negative turbulent cross helicity is generated is determined by whether the mean electric-current density and the mean vorticity are positively aligned or negatively aligned. If the mean electric-current density is parallel to the mean vorticity in the sense  $J \cdot \Omega > 0$ , a positive cross helicity is generated  $P_W^{(E)} > 0$ , while they are anti-parallel  $(J \cdot \Omega < 0)$ , a negative cross helicity is generated as

$$
\begin{cases}\nP_W^{(E)} > 0 \quad \text{for } \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} > 0, \\
P_W^{(E)} < 0 \quad \text{for } \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} < 0.\n\end{cases} \tag{183}
$$

This suggests that in the toroidal or cylindrical plasma confguration, a positive or negative turbulent cross helicity is systematically produced by the poloidal rotation coupled with the plasma current.

As we see later in Sect. [7,](#page-75-0) this production mechanism based on the coupling of the mean vorticity  $\Omega$  with the mean electric-current density **J** plays a dominant role in the cross-helicity generation in the turbulent magnetic reconnection.

# **4.2.3 Cross‑helicity generation by turbulence inhomogeneity along mean magnetic feld**

In addition to the production rates related to the coupling of the mean velocity and magnetic-field strains,  $P_W^{(R)} \sim S$  : M, and the coupling of the mean vorticity and

electric-current density,  $P_W^{(E)} \sim \Omega \cdot J$ , the inhomogeneity of turbulence along the mean magnetic field,  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$ , provides a possibility of positive or negative crosshelicity generation depending on the sign of  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$ . This generation mechanism of turbulent cross helicity is totally diferent from the production-rate-related mechanisms given above by  $P_W^{(R)}$  and  $P_W^{(E)}$ . As we saw in [\(172](#page-44-2)), the production-rate-related mechanisms  $P_W^{(R)}$  and  $P_W^{(E)}$  have the corresponding counterparts in the equation of the mean-feld cross helicity **U** ⋅ **B** as

$$
P_W^{(R)} = + \mathcal{R}^{ij} \frac{\partial B^j}{\partial x^i} = -P_W^{(R)},\tag{184}
$$

$$
P_{\mathcal{W}}^{(\mathrm{E})} = + \mathbf{E}_{\mathrm{M}} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} = -P_{W}^{(\mathrm{E})}. \tag{185}
$$

This means that the turbulent cross-helicity generation expressed by  $P_W^{(R)}$  and  $P_W^{(E)}$ are originated from the cascade of the mean-feld cross helicity **U** ⋅ **B** to the turbulent cross helicity  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$ . This is not the case for the turbulent cross-heli-<br> $\mathbf{u}'$  consention  $\langle \mathbf{R}, \nabla \rangle$ . In the mean field error helicity constitution and have city generation  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$ . In the mean-field cross-helicity equation, we have  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)\mathcal{K} = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)(\mathbf{U}^2 + \mathbf{B}^2)/2$  but not in the form of  $-(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$ . This is because this mechanism is not due to the production rate of the cross helicity, but is originated from the transport or fux rate of the cross helicity across the boundaries written as  $\nabla \cdot (K\mathbf{B})$  in the turbulent cross-helicity equation and  $\nabla \cdot (K\mathbf{B})$  in the meanfeld cross-helicity equation.

The cross-helicity generation due to the turbulence inhomogeneity along the mean magnetic field,  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$ , is a part of the transport rate, and is regarded as a flux across the boundaries. This mechanism is directly related to the asymmetry of the Alfvén wave propagation along the mean magnetic field **B**. For simplicity of discussion, we consider the turbulent energy is constituted by an assembly of Alfvén waves, which propagate in parallel and anti-parallel direction along the mean magnetic field **B**. The inhomogeneity of turbulence along **B** corresponds to the inhomogeneous distribution of the Alfvén-wave packets along **B**. For instance, if the number of the Alfvén-wave packets increases along



<span id="page-49-0"></span>**Fig. 21** Cross-helicity generation due to inhomogeneity of turbulence and asymmetry of Alfvén wave propagation



<span id="page-50-0"></span>**Fig. 22** Segregation of turbulent cross helicity arising from the cross-helicity generation mechanism due to turbulence inhomogeneity along global magnetic field  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$ 

the mean magnetic-field direction, the turbulent energy increases along **B**,  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) K > 0$  (Fig. [21\)](#page-49-0). In the domain, due to the difference between the parallel and anti-parallel propagations of the Alfvén-wave packets, the waves propagating in the anti-parallel to **B** is more than the counterparts propagating in the parallel direction. This dominance of the Alfvén waves propagating in the antiparallel direction to the mean magnetic field leads to a positive cross helicity in the domain. In this sense, the part of the transport rate in the cross-helicity evolution equation,  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$ , represents the generation of the turbulent cross helicity associated with the asymmetric Alfvén-wave propagation. This is also the case for the generation of the mean-field cross helicity **U** ⋅ **B**. If the anti-parallel propagating Alfvén wave is dominant, the part of the transport rate of the meanfield cross helicity,  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathcal{K}$ , becomes positive, and represents a positive crosshelicity generation at large scales. This makes marked difference between the cross-helicity generation mechanisms related to the production rates  $P_W^{(R)}$  and  $P_{W_{-}}^{(\mathrm{E})}$ 

This cross-helicity generation mechanism based on the turbulence inhomogeneity along the mean magnetic field is expected to play an essential role in some astrophysical configuration. If the global magnetic field thrusts through a plasma gas disk, where the magnitude of turbulence is non-uniform with respect to the depth, we have non-zero  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$  (Fig. [22](#page-50-0)). If the level of turbulence is higher in the midplane region than those in the peripheral planes (north and south regions of the disk), a distribution of positive and negative turbulent cross helicity in the northern and southern halves of the disk is realized. This mechanism is expected to work for the segregation of turbulent cross helicity in an astrophysical disk.

#### **4.3 Cross‑helicity generation in compressible MHD**

In the previous subsection (Sect.  $4.2$ ), we listed the cross-helicity generation mechanisms in the incompressible MHD turbulence. They are  $P_W^{(\text{R})}$  ([178](#page-46-0)),  $P_W^{(\text{E})}$ [\(179\)](#page-46-1), and  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$  ([175](#page-45-0)). If we look at these generation mechanisms, we see they require a presence of the mean magnetic feld **B**. We should note that the third term in  $P_W^{(E)}$  ([182](#page-47-2)),  $-\gamma \Omega^2$ , always works for reducing the magnitude of the turbulent cross helicity.

It is worth noting that, as we saw in Sects.  $3.2.1$  and  $3.2.2$ , both the  $\alpha$  effect,  $\alpha$ **B**, and the turbulent diffusivity effect,  $\beta \nabla \times$ **B**, need the presence of the mean magnetic field **B** and its spatial variation represented by  $\mathbf{J} = \nabla \times \mathbf{B}$  for the induction of magnetic fluctuations  $\delta \mathbf{b}'$ , which constitutes of the turbulent electromotive force through  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \delta \mathbf{b}' \rangle$ . However, generation of the transport coefficients  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ <br>does not require the **presence** of the mean meanwise field **P** does not require the presence of the mean magnetic feld **B**.

As the generation mechanisms of the turbulent cross helicity,  $P_W = P_W^{(R)} + P_W^{(E)}$ and  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$ , show, in the presence of the mean magnetic field **B**, the turbulent cross helicity is generated. Then coupled with the mean absolute vorticity (relative vorticity and rotation), the cross-helicity efect certainly works for the turbulent electromotive force (EMF). In the sense that the cross-helicity efect can contribute to the counter balancing to the turbulent magnetic difusivity, the cross-helicity dynamo can be regarded as a battery efect. For the cross-helicity efect to be a self-exited dynamo, we need a mechanism that produces the turbulent cross helicity without resorting to the presence of the mean magnetic feld **B**. Relaxing the incompressible constraint may be one of the ways to generate cross helicity even in the absence of the mean magnetic feld.

To see the efect of variable density, we leave from the magnetic feld measured in the Alfvén-speed unit, and return to the one measured in the original natural unit. We defne the turbulent cross helicity as

<span id="page-51-0"></span>
$$
W_* = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}'_* \rangle \tag{186}
$$

where  $\mathbf{b}_*$  is the magnetic field measured with the original unit, while  $\mathbf{b}'(=\mathbf{b}'_{*}/(\mu_0\rho)^{1/2})$  *is the magnetic field measured with the Alfvén speed unit. The* evolution equation of the turbulent cross helicity *W*∗ in the compressible MHD is written as

$$
\frac{DW_*}{Dt} \equiv \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla\right) W_* \n= -\frac{1}{2} \left\langle u'^i u'^j - \frac{1}{\mu_0 \overline{\rho}} b'_*{}^i b'_*{}^j \right\rangle \left(\frac{\partial B_*^j}{\partial x^i} + \frac{\partial B_*^i}{\partial x^j}\right) - \left\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}'_* \right\rangle \cdot \Omega \n- (\gamma - 1) \frac{1}{\overline{\rho}} \left\langle \rho' \mathbf{b}'_* \right\rangle \cdot \nabla E - (\gamma - 1) \frac{1}{\overline{\rho}} \left\langle e' \mathbf{b}'_* \right\rangle \cdot \nabla \overline{\rho} - \frac{1}{\overline{\rho}} \left\langle \rho' \mathbf{b}'_* \right\rangle \cdot \frac{D \mathbf{U}}{Dt} \tag{187} \n- W_* \nabla \cdot \mathbf{U} + \mathbf{B}_* \cdot \nabla \left\langle \mathbf{u}'^2 / 2 \right\rangle + \left\langle \mathbf{f}' \cdot \mathbf{b}'_* \right\rangle \n- \varepsilon_{W_*} + T'_{W_*} + \mathbf{R}.\mathbf{T}.,
$$

where *E* is the mean internal energy,  $e'$  the internal energy fluctuation,  $\overline{\rho}$  the mean density,  $\rho'$  the density fluctuation, and **f**<sup> $\prime$ </sup> the fluctuation part of the external force if any. In ([187\)](#page-51-0), the frst two terms and the seventh term on the right-most side correspond to the production rates,  $P_W^{(\text{R})}$  ([178\)](#page-46-0) and  $P_W^{(\text{E})}$  ([179\)](#page-46-1), and the transport rate related to the inhomogeneity along the mean magnetic field,  $(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$  ([176\)](#page-45-2) in the incompressible case. The third to ffth terms are compressibility-originated production rates, which do not directly originate from the mean magnetic feld **B**. They are written in the form of the turbulent fluxes  $\langle \rho' \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  and  $\langle \rho' \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  coupled with the mean inter-<br>real anomy and internal-energy gradient  $\nabla E$ , the mean density gradient  $\nabla \overline{\rho}$ , and the mean velocity variation along the fuid motion *D***U**∕*Dt*. These production terms are expected to play an important role in the turbulent cross-helicity generation in strongly compressible cases. The sixth term  $-W\nabla \cdot \mathbf{U}$  represents the mean dilatation effect in the turbulent cross-helicity generation, and does not depend on the mean magnetic feld. This indicates that a positive turbulent cross helicity is generated in the mean contraction case ( $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{U} < 0$ ) and a negative cross helicity is generated in the mean expansion case  $(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{U} > 0)$ . The eighth term  $\langle \mathbf{f}' \cdot \mathbf{b}'_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle$  represents the turbulent cross-helicity generation by external force. The dissipation term and the transport term other than  $\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla \langle \mathbf{u'}^2 \rangle / 2$  are denoted by  $\varepsilon_{W_*}$  and  $T'_{W_*}$ , respectively, and their detailed expressions are suppressed here. The fnal R.T. denotes the residual terms due to the higher order correlations.

As the production terms intrinsic to the compressibility, we have  $-(\gamma - 1)/\overline{\rho}$ <sub></sub><sup> $\ell$ </sup> $\rho'$ **b**<sup> $\ell$ </sup>) $\nabla$ *E*,  $-(\gamma - 1)/\overline{\rho}$ <sub> $\ell$ </sub> $e'$ **b**<sup> $\ell$ </sup>) $\nabla$ <sub> $\bar{\rho}$ , and  $-1/\overline{\rho}$ <sub> $\ell$ </sub> $e'$ **b** $\ell$  $\bar{\rho}$  $\ell$  $\bar{\rho}$  $\bar{\rho}$ . These pro-</sub> duction mechanisms indicate that, in the compressible MHD case, a positive or negative cross helicity can be produced by the turbulent fuxes coupled with the mean internal-energy gradient, mean density gradient, etc. without resorting to the mean magnetic feld.

#### **4.4 Evaluation of cross‑helicity dissipation rate**

The dissipation rate of the cross helicity is defned by (4.18). We can formally derive the equation of the cross helicity from the equations of the fuctuating velocity  $(13)$  and magnetic field  $(14)$  $(14)$  $(14)$ .

<span id="page-53-0"></span>
$$
\frac{D\varepsilon_W}{Dt} = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + U \cdot \nabla\right) \varepsilon_W
$$
\n
$$
= (v + \lambda) \left\langle \frac{\partial u'^a}{\partial x^c} \frac{\partial b'^b}{\partial x^c} - \frac{\partial b'^a}{\partial x^c} \frac{\partial u'^b}{\partial x^c} \right\rangle \frac{\partial U^a}{\partial x^b}
$$
\n
$$
+ (v + \lambda) \left\langle \frac{\partial u'^a}{\partial x^c} b'^b - u'^b \frac{\partial b'^a}{\partial x^c} \right\rangle \frac{\partial^2 U^a}{\partial x^b \partial x^c}
$$
\n
$$
+ (v + \lambda) \left\langle \frac{\partial u'^b}{\partial x^a} \frac{\partial^2 u'^b}{\partial x^a \partial x^c} + \frac{\partial b'^b}{\partial x^a} \frac{\partial^2 b'^b}{\partial x^a \partial x^c} \right\rangle B^c
$$
\n
$$
+ (v + \lambda) \left\langle \frac{\partial u'^c}{\partial x^a} \frac{\partial u'^c}{\partial x^b} - \frac{\partial b'^c}{\partial x^a} \frac{\partial b'^c}{\partial x^b} \right\rangle \frac{\partial B^a}{\partial x^b}
$$
\n
$$
- (v + \lambda) \left\langle \frac{\partial u'^a}{\partial x^c} \frac{\partial u'^a}{\partial x^c} - \frac{\partial b'^a}{\partial x^c} \frac{\partial b'^a}{\partial x^b} \right\rangle \frac{\partial B^a}{\partial x^b}
$$
\n
$$
- (v + \lambda) \left\langle \frac{\partial u'^a}{\partial x^c} u'^b - \frac{\partial b'^a}{\partial x^c} \frac{\partial b'^a}{\partial x^b} \right\rangle \frac{\partial^2 B^a}{\partial x^b}
$$
\n
$$
- (v + \lambda) \left\langle \frac{\partial u'^b}{\partial x^a} \frac{\partial u'^c}{\partial x^a} \frac{\partial b'^b}{\partial x^b} \right\rangle - (v + \lambda) \left\langle \frac{\partial b'^b}{\partial x^a} \frac{\partial u'^c}{\partial x^a} \frac{\partial u'^b}{\partial x^c} \right\rangle
$$
\n
$$
+ (v + \lambda) \left\langle \frac{\partial u'^b}{\partial x^a} \frac{\partial b'^c}{\partial x^
$$

This shows how mean feld and its inhomogeneities contribute to the dissipation of the turbulent cross helicity, but the structure of the equation is very complicated as compared with the equation of the turbulent cross helicity  $(158)$  $(158)$  with  $(162)$  $(162)$ – $(164)$  $(164)$ . One reason of this complexity arises from the fact that, unlike the case of the total amount of the cross helicity, the total amount of the cross-helicity dissipation rate  $\epsilon_W$  is not at all the conserved quantity.

## **4.4.1 Algebraic model of the cross‑helicity dissipation rate**

Under the intractable complexity of the exact dissipation equation [\(188](#page-53-0)), one way to evaluate the cross-helicity dissipation rate  $\varepsilon_W$  is to express it in an algebraic form as

$$
\varepsilon_W = C_W \frac{W}{\tau} = C_W \frac{\varepsilon}{K} W,\tag{189}
$$

where  $\tau$  is the eddy turnover time and  $C_W$  is the model constant. As for the eddy turnover time, we adopt the simplest possible model in terms of the turbulent energy *K* and its dissipation rate  $\epsilon$  as

<span id="page-54-0"></span>
$$
\tau = \frac{K}{\varepsilon}.\tag{190}
$$

In [\(189](#page-54-0)), we consider that the dissipation of the turbulent cross helicity *W* is proportional to *W* divided by the characteristic timescale of turbulence  $\tau$ .

There is some constraint on the cross-helicity dissipation rate and related model constant. First of all, there is a mathematical constraint on the magnitude of *W*. Since  $({\bf u}' \pm {\bf b}')^2 \ge 0$ , the magnitude of *W* is bounded by *K* as

<span id="page-54-1"></span>
$$
\frac{\|W\|}{K} = \frac{\|\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle\|}{\langle \mathbf{u}'^2 + \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle/2} \le 1.
$$
 (191)

Due to this relation, we also have a constraint on the magnitude of  $\varepsilon_W$ . From [\(158](#page-43-1)) for *K* and *W*, we have

$$
\frac{D}{Dt}\frac{W}{K} = \frac{W}{K}\left(\frac{1}{W}\frac{DW}{Dt} - \frac{1}{K}\frac{DK}{Dt}\right)
$$
  
\n
$$
= \frac{W}{K}\left(\frac{1}{W}P_W - \frac{1}{K}P_K\right) - \frac{W}{K}\left(\frac{1}{W}\varepsilon_W - \frac{1}{K}\varepsilon\right)
$$
  
\n
$$
+ \frac{W}{K}\left(\frac{1}{W}T_W - \frac{1}{K}T_K\right).
$$
\n(192)

This is a generic equation of the normalized cross helicity *W*/*K*, and should be satisfed with in any cases. In the case of homogeneous turbulence with no production and transport rates, [\(192](#page-54-1)) is reduced to

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\frac{W}{K} = -\left(\frac{1}{W}\varepsilon_W - \frac{1}{K}\varepsilon\right)\frac{W}{K}.\tag{193}
$$

We assume that the parenthesized quantity on the r.h.s. does not depend on *W*/*K*. This is the case if we adopt the simplest algebraic models for the energy and crosshelicity dissipation rates as

$$
\varepsilon = \frac{K}{\tau} \tag{194}
$$

and [\(189](#page-54-0)). To avoid the exponential growth of *W*/*K* in time, and to satisfy the condition  $W/K \leq 1$ , we have an equality:

$$
\frac{\|\varepsilon_W\|}{\varepsilon} > \frac{\|W\|}{K},\tag{195}
$$

which is equivalent to the constraint on the model constant  $C_W$  in ([189\)](#page-54-0) as

$$
C_W > 1. \tag{196}
$$

### **4.4.2 Modeling the evolution equation of cross‑helicity dissipation rate**

In homogeneous MHD turbulence, the evolution of the cross helicity had been argued in the context that whether a positive or negative cross helicity becomes dominant depends on which sign of cross helicity prevails at the initial stage (Dobrowolny et al. [1980a](#page-94-0), [b\)](#page-95-0). However, further investigation showed that the MHD turbulence has much more diverse possibilities including the scaled cross-helicity behavior (Ting et al. [1986](#page-96-3); Stribling and Matthaeus [1991](#page-96-4)).

In the context of inhomogeneous turbulence with large-scale velocity and magnetic-feld shears, the evolution of the cross helicity depends on several largescale inhomogeneities, and the cross-helicity dissipation rate may be subject to such inhomogeneity efects. Here, we incorporate such inhomogeneity efects through constructing the evolution equation of the turbulent cross-helicity dissipation rate.

With the aid of the multiple-scale renormalized perturbation expansion theory, we derive an equation of the cross-helicity dissipation rate on the theoretical basis. In the framework of the multiple-scale renormalized perturbation expansion theory, the turbulent cross helicity *W* is expressed as

$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle = \int d\mathbf{k} \langle u'^{\ell}(\mathbf{k}; \tau) b'^{\ell}(\mathbf{k}; \tau) \rangle
$$
  
= 
$$
\int d\mathbf{k} \left[ \langle u'_{00}^{\prime}{}^{\ell} b'_{00}{}^{\ell} \rangle + \langle u'_{00}^{\prime}{}^{\ell} b'_{01}{}^{\ell} \rangle + \langle u'_{01}^{\prime}{}^{\ell} b'_{00}{}^{\ell} \rangle + \cdots
$$
  
+ 
$$
\delta \left( \langle u'_{10}^{\prime}{}^{\ell} b'_{00}{}^{\ell} \rangle + \langle u'_{00}^{\prime}{}^{\ell} b'_{10}{}^{\ell} \rangle + \cdots \right) + \cdots \right].
$$
 (197)

From the analysis, the turbulent cross helicity is expressed as

$$
W = 2I_0\{Q_{ub}\} - I_0\bigg\{G_S, \frac{D}{Dt}(Q_{ub} + Q_{bu})\bigg\},\tag{198}
$$

where we have adopted the abbreviated forms of the spectral and time integrals defned by

<span id="page-55-0"></span>
$$
I_n\{A\} = \int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \; k^{2n} A(k, \mathbf{x}; \tau, \tau, t), \tag{199}
$$

$$
I_n\{A,B\} = \int \mathrm{d}\mathbf{k} \int_{-\infty}^{\tau} \mathrm{d}\tau_1 \, k^{2n} A(k,\mathbf{x};\tau,\tau_1,t) B(k,\mathbf{k};\tau,\tau_1,t). \tag{200}
$$

In [\(198](#page-55-0)),  $Q_{ub}$  and  $Q_{bu}$  are spectral correlation functions representing the basic or lowest order field cross helicity, and  $G<sub>S</sub>$  is the Green's function.

We assume that the correlation and Green's functions in the inertial range are expressed as

$$
Q_{ub}(k, \mathbf{x}; \tau, \tau', t) = \sigma_W(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{x}; \tau) \exp[-\omega_W(k, \mathbf{x}; t) || \tau - \tau'||],
$$
 (201)

$$
G_{\rm S}(k, \mathbf{x}; \tau, \tau', t) = \theta(\tau - \tau') \exp[-\omega_{\rm S}(k, \mathbf{x}; t)(\tau - \tau')],\tag{202}
$$

respectively. Here  $\theta(\tau)$  is the Heaviside's step function  $\theta(\tau) = 1$  for  $\tau > 0$  and  $\theta = 0$ for  $\tau$  < 0]. Here  $\sigma_w(k, \mathbf{x}; \tau)$  is the power spectrum of the cross helicity *W*, and  $\omega_w$ and  $\omega_{\rm S}$  represent the frequencies or timescales of fluctuations. As for the spectrum of *W* as well as that of the turbulent energy *K*, we assume

<span id="page-56-5"></span><span id="page-56-4"></span><span id="page-56-3"></span><span id="page-56-1"></span><span id="page-56-0"></span>
$$
\sigma_K = \sigma_{K0} \varepsilon^{2/3} k^{-11/3},\tag{203}
$$

$$
\sigma_W = \sigma_{W0} \varepsilon^{-1/3} \varepsilon_W(\mathbf{x}; t) k^{-11/3}, \tag{204}
$$

and for the timescales,

$$
\omega_{\rm S}(k, \mathbf{x}; t) = \omega_{\rm S0} \varepsilon^{1/3} k^{2/3} = \tau_{\rm S}^{-1},\tag{205}
$$

$$
\omega_W(k, \mathbf{x}; t) = \omega_{W0} \epsilon_W^{1/3} k^{2/3} = \tau_W^{-1}, \tag{206}
$$

where  $\omega_{\text{SO}}$ ,  $\omega_{K0}$ , and  $\omega_{W0}$  are the numerical constants. Expression ([204\)](#page-56-0) is based on the assumption that the spectrum of the cross helicity depends on the wavenumber *k*, the cross-helicity transfer/dissipation rate  $\varepsilon_W$  and the energy transfer/dissipation rate  $\varepsilon$ . Alternatively, ([203\)](#page-56-1) and ([204\)](#page-56-0) are based on the assumption that the ratio of the energy spectrum to the energy transfer/dissipation rate,  $\sigma_K/\varepsilon$ , and that of the cross-helicity spectrum to the cross-helicity transfer/dissipation rate,  $\sigma_W/\epsilon_W$ , have the same dependence on the energy transfer/dissipation rate  $\varepsilon$  and wavenumber  $k$  as

<span id="page-56-2"></span>
$$
\frac{\sigma_K}{\varepsilon} = \frac{\sigma_W}{\varepsilon_W} = \varepsilon^{-1/3} k^{-11/3}.
$$
\n(207)

Considering  $\varepsilon^{-1/3} k^{-2/3}$  gives a timescale, ([207\)](#page-56-2) corresponds to assuming the energy  $K = \int \sigma_K d\mathbf{k}$ ) divided by  $\epsilon$  and  $W = \int \sigma_W d\mathbf{k}$ ) divided by  $\sigma_W$  give the same timescale  $\tau \sim \varepsilon^{-1/3} k^{-2/3}.$ 

Using the correlation and Green's functions ([201](#page-56-3)) and [\(202\)](#page-56-4), *W* is calculated as

$$
W = 2 \int d\mathbf{k} \ \varepsilon^{-1/3}(\mathbf{x};t) \varepsilon(\mathbf{x};t) k^{-11/3}
$$

$$
- 2 \int d\mathbf{k} \left[ \frac{1}{\omega_{\rm S} + \omega_{\rm W}} \frac{D\sigma_{\rm W}}{Dt} - \frac{\sigma_{\rm W}}{(\omega_{\rm S} + \omega_{\rm W})^2} \frac{D\omega_{\rm W}}{Dt} \right].
$$
 (208)

From the inertial-range form  $(203)$  $(203)$ – $(206)$  $(206)$ , this is rewritten as

<span id="page-57-0"></span>
$$
W = 4 \cdot 2\pi \varepsilon^{-1/3} \varepsilon_{W} \int_{\|\mathbf{k}\| \ge k_{\text{C}}} dk \, k^{-5/3}
$$
  
\n
$$
- 4 \cdot 2\pi \frac{\sigma_{W0}}{\omega_{\text{sw}} \varepsilon_{\text{sw}}^{1/3}} \int_{\|\mathbf{k}\| \ge k_{\text{C}}} dk \, k^{4/3} \frac{D}{Dt} \big[ \varepsilon^{-1/3}(\mathbf{x}; t) \varepsilon_{W}(\mathbf{x}; t) k^{-11/3} \big] \qquad (209)
$$
  
\n
$$
+ 4 \cdot 2\pi \frac{\sigma_{W0} \omega_{W0}}{(\omega_{\text{sw}} \varepsilon_{\text{sw}}^{1/3})^2} \varepsilon^{-1/3} \varepsilon_{W} \int_{\|\mathbf{k}\| \ge k_{\text{C}}} dk \, k^{-3} \frac{D}{Dt} \bigg[ \varepsilon_{W}^{1/3}(\mathbf{x}; t) k^{2/3} \bigg],
$$

where  $k<sub>C</sub>$  is the cutoff wavenumber. Here, we have introduced a synthesized timescale  $\tau_{\text{sw}}$ , defined by

$$
\frac{1}{\tau_{\text{SW}}} = \frac{1}{\tau_{\text{S}}} + \frac{1}{\tau_{W}} = \left(\omega_{\text{SO}}\epsilon^{1/3} + \omega_{W0}\epsilon_{W}^{1/3}\right)k^{2/3} \equiv \omega_{\text{sw}}\epsilon_{\text{sw}}^{1/3}k^{2/3}.
$$
 (210)

It is worth while to note that  $\omega_{SW}$  and  $\varepsilon_{SW}$  appear only in the combination of  $\omega_{SW} \epsilon_{SW}^{1/3}$ , which gives a timescale. Each of  $\omega_{SW}$  and  $\epsilon_{SW}$  does not have a definite meaning. With this point in mind, hereafter we denote

$$
A_W(\omega_{\text{S0}}, \omega_{W0}) \equiv \frac{\omega_{W0} \epsilon_W^{1/3}}{\omega_{\text{sw}} \epsilon_{\text{sw}}^{1/3}} = \frac{\omega_{W0} \epsilon_W^{1/3}}{\omega_{\text{S0}} \epsilon^{1/3} + \omega_{W0} \epsilon_W^{1/3}} = \frac{\tau_{\text{SW}}}{\tau_W}
$$
(211)

for simplicity of notation.

The cutoff wavenumber  $k<sub>C</sub>$  introduced in ([209\)](#page-57-0) is the lower bounder of the spectral integral. This wavenumber is directly related to the largest eddy size of turbulent motions,  $\ell_c$ , as

<span id="page-57-1"></span>
$$
\ell_{\rm C} = 2\pi / k_{\rm C}.\tag{212}
$$

This length scale  $\ell_{\rm C}$  is considered to dominantly contribute to and determines the turbulent MHD energy and cross helicity. Here, we should note the following point. The correlation length of the cross helicity may be diferent from that of the MHD energy. The characteristic lengths of turbulence represent the scales of the largest turbulent motion corresponding to the scale with the largest magnitudes of spectra of MHD energy and cross helicity. Length scale diference between the MHD energy and cross helicity arise from a specifc mechanism that produces considerably diferent spectral forms for the energy and cross helicity. This is not the case, for instance, for the solar-wind turbulence. In this sense, adopting the same correlation lengths for both the energy and cross helicity, as  $\ell_K \sim \ell_W(\equiv \ell_C)$ , is not unrealistic assumption. Related to this point, extended discussions of correlation length scales and timescales by Matthaeus et al. ([1994\)](#page-95-1) and Hossain et al. ([1995\)](#page-95-2) are important.

We calculate the Lagrange derivatives and the spectral integrals in ([209\)](#page-57-0). If we denote the scaled wavenumber as

$$
s = k/k_{\rm C},\tag{213}
$$

we obtain

$$
W = 4 \cdot (2\pi)^{1/3} \sigma_{W0} \varepsilon^{-1/3} \varepsilon_W k_C^{2/3} \int_{s \ge 1} ds \, s^{-5/3}
$$
  
- 4 \cdot 2\pi \frac{\sigma\_{W0}}{\omega\_{sw} \varepsilon\_{sw}^{1/3}} k\_C^{7/3} \int\_{s \ge 1} ds \, s^{-7/3} \frac{D}{Dt} \Big[ \varepsilon^{-1/3} (\mathbf{x}; t) \varepsilon\_W (\mathbf{x}; t) k\_C^{-11/3} \Big] (214)  
+ 4 \cdot 2\pi \frac{\sigma\_{W0} \omega\_{W0}}{(\omega\_{sw} \varepsilon\_{sw}^{1/3})^2} \varepsilon^{-1/3} \varepsilon\_W k\_C^{-2} \int\_{s \ge 1} ds \, s^{-7/3} \frac{D}{Dt} \Big[ \varepsilon\_W^{1/3} (\mathbf{x}; t) k\_C^{2/3} \Big].

In terms of  $\ell_C$  [\(212](#page-57-1)), this can be rewritten as

$$
W = 6 \cdot (2\pi)^{1/3} \sigma_{W0} \epsilon^{-1/3} \epsilon_W \ell_C^{2/3}
$$
  
+ 
$$
\frac{1}{(2\pi)^{1/3}} \frac{\sigma_{W0}}{\omega_{sw} \epsilon_{sw}^{1/3}} \epsilon^{-1/3} \epsilon_W \ell_C^{4/3} \left\{ \frac{1}{\epsilon} \frac{D\epsilon}{Dt} - \left[ 3 - A_W(\omega_{S0}, \omega_{W0}) \right] \frac{1}{\epsilon_W} \frac{D\epsilon_W}{Dt} + \left[ 11 - 2A_W(\omega_{S0}, \omega_{W0}) \right] \frac{1}{\ell_C} \frac{D\ell_C}{Dt} \right\}.
$$
(215)

As we see in ([203\)](#page-56-1), the spectrum of turbulent energy *K* is assumed to be expressed in terms of the dissipation rate  $\varepsilon$  and the wavenumber  $k$ . In the hydrodynamic turbulence modeling, we can construct a closed system of model equations from a combination of any two variables among  $K_u = \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle / 2$ , its dissipation rate  $\varepsilon_u$ , and  $\ell_C$ (= 2 $\pi/k_C$ ). To keep the transferability of the model among these variables,  $K_u$ ,  $\epsilon_{\mu}$ , and  $\ell_{\rm C}$  should be linked with each other by an algebraic relation. Otherwise we cannot expect any transferability among the model variables. This is also the case for the MHD turbulence modeling. If we retain the first term in  $(215)$  $(215)$ , we get an algebraic expression for the turbulent cross helicity as

<span id="page-58-2"></span><span id="page-58-1"></span><span id="page-58-0"></span>
$$
W = 6 \cdot (2\pi)^{1/3} \sigma_{W0} \varepsilon^{-1/3} \varepsilon_W \ell_C^{2/3},
$$
 (216)

or equivalently,

$$
\mathcal{E}_{\rm C} = 6^{-3/2} (2\pi)^{-1/2} \sigma_{W0}^{-3/2} \varepsilon^{1/2} \varepsilon_W^{-3/2} W^{3/2}.
$$
 (217)

Equation [\(216](#page-58-1)), corresponding to the spectral expression ([204\)](#page-56-0), assures an algebraic relation among *W*,  $\varepsilon_w$ ,  $\varepsilon$ , and  $\mathcal{C}_C$  (=  $2\pi/k_C$ ).

Using [\(217](#page-58-2)), we transfer the expression [\(215](#page-58-0)) expressed in terms of  $\varepsilon$ ,  $\varepsilon_W$ , and  $\ell_C$ into the expression expressed in terms of  $W$ ,  $\varepsilon_w$ ,  $\varepsilon$ . As a result, we have

$$
\frac{D\varepsilon_W}{Dt} = C_1(\omega_{S0}, \omega_{W0}) \frac{\varepsilon_W}{\varepsilon} \frac{D\varepsilon}{Dt} + C_2(\omega_{S0}, \omega_{W0}) \frac{\varepsilon_W}{W} \frac{DW}{Dt}
$$
(218)

with

$$
C_1(\omega_{\text{S0}}, \omega_{\text{W0}}) = \frac{13 - A_W(\omega_{\text{S0}}, \omega_{\text{W0}})}{39 - 8A_W(\omega_{\text{S0}}, \omega_{\text{W0}})}, \quad C_2(\omega_{\text{S0}}, \omega_{\text{W0}}) = \frac{33 - 6A_W(\omega_{\text{S0}}, \omega_{\text{W0}})}{39 - 8A_W(\omega_{\text{S0}}, \omega_{\text{W0}})}.
$$
\n(219)

If the timescale associated with the cross helicity is similar to the one with the Green's function as

$$
\omega_{\text{SO}}\varepsilon^{1/3} \simeq \omega_{\text{W0}}\varepsilon_W^{1/3},\tag{220}
$$

 $A_W(\omega_{\text{SO}}, \omega_{\text{WO}})$  is estimated as

<span id="page-59-0"></span>
$$
A_W(\omega_{\text{SO}}, \omega_{W0}) \simeq 1/2. \tag{221}
$$

Then we have model coefficients  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  (4.62) as

$$
C_1(\omega_{\text{S0}}, \omega_{\text{W0}}) \simeq \frac{12}{35} \simeq 0.34, \quad C_2(\omega_{\text{S0}}, \omega_{\text{W0}}) \simeq \frac{6}{7} \simeq 0.86. \tag{222}
$$

We finally obtain the evolution equation of the cross-helicity dissipation ( $\epsilon_w$  equation) as

$$
\frac{D\varepsilon_W}{Dt} = C_{\varepsilon_W 1} \frac{\varepsilon_W}{K} P_K - C_{\varepsilon_W 2} \frac{\varepsilon_W}{K} \varepsilon + C_{\varepsilon_W 3} \frac{\varepsilon_W}{W} P_W - C_{\varepsilon_W 4} \frac{\varepsilon_W}{W} \varepsilon_W \tag{223}
$$

with the model constants

$$
C_{\varepsilon_{w}1} = C_{1}C_{\varepsilon1} = 0.34 \times 1.4 = 0.48,
$$
  
\n
$$
C_{\varepsilon_{w}2} = C_{1}C_{\varepsilon2} = 0.34 \times 1.9 = 0.65,
$$
  
\n
$$
C_{\varepsilon_{w}3} = C_{\varepsilon_{w}4} = C_{2} = 0.86.
$$
\n(224)

Here we have used

$$
C_{\varepsilon 1} = 1.4, \quad C_{\varepsilon 2} = 1.9 \tag{225}
$$

from the standard  $\varepsilon$  equation.

In the present formulation, the evolution equation of the cross-helicity dissipation  $(\epsilon_w$  equation) is derived from the theoretical analysis of the velocity and magneticfeld fuctuations. Refecting the dependence of the cross-helicity spectrum both on the  $\epsilon$  and  $\epsilon_W$  ([202\)](#page-56-4), the  $\epsilon_W$  equation depends on the *W* equation and  $\epsilon$  equation as [\(216](#page-58-1)) and [\(221](#page-59-0)).

From the algebraic relation ([216\)](#page-58-1), we write the cross-helicity dissipation rate  $\epsilon_W$ as

$$
\varepsilon_W = 6^{-1} \cdot (2\pi)^{-1/3} \sigma_{W0}^{-1} \frac{W}{\tau}
$$
 (226)

with

<span id="page-59-1"></span>
$$
\tau = \varepsilon^{-1/3} \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{C}}^{2/3}.\tag{227}
$$

Equation ([226\)](#page-59-1) corresponds to the simplest algebraic model of  $\epsilon_W$  [\(189](#page-54-0)). This means that the simple algebraic model can be regarded as the lowest order evaluation of the turbulent cross helicity *W* in the framework of the multiple-scale renormalized perturbation analysis [\(198](#page-55-0)).



<span id="page-60-1"></span>**Fig. 23** Schematic view of dynamo-wave migration. **a** A magnetic-feld loop is generated by the action of the  $\alpha$  effect in a local Cartesian coordinate system  $(x, y, z)$ . The case with the positive  $\alpha$  is depicted in this fgure. **b** Tilting of the magnetic loop due to a shearing motion. **c** Migration of the magnetic feld

# <span id="page-60-0"></span>**5 Cross‑helicity efect in stellar dynamos**

## **5.1 Oscillatory and migratory dynamo**

Combination of the helicity or  $\alpha$  effect and the differential rotation or  $\Omega$  effect has been investigated in the context of the polarity reversal of the solar magnetic felds. One of the representative oscillatory dynamo models is the Parker equations with the  $\alpha - \Omega$  dynamo (Parker [1955\)](#page-95-3). Parker [\(1955\)](#page-95-3) considered a dynamo mechanism constituted of non-uniform rotation and small-scale cyclonic or tornado-like fuid motions. The non-uniform rotation generates the toroidal magnetic field from the poloidal one (the so-called  $\Omega$  effect). With the aid of the cyclonic fuid motions, the poloidal magnetic feld is regenerated from the toroidal one in the form of a loop magnetic field ( $\alpha$  effect). This mechanism is called the  $\alpha$ or helicity dynamo, of which elaborated works have been done (Mofatt [1978;](#page-95-4) Krause and Rädler [1980;](#page-95-5) Mofatt and Dormy [2019](#page-95-6)). The equation of the mean magnetic feld is written as

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}) + \nabla \times (-\beta \nabla \times \mathbf{B} + \alpha \mathbf{B}).
$$
 (228)

In the Parker model, the  $\alpha$  effect produces a poloidal (latitudinal and radial) magnetic-feld component from a toroidal (azimuthal) magnetic-feld component through twisting turbulent motions (helicity), and a toroidal magnetic-feld component is produced by the diferential rotation as shown in Fig. [23.](#page-60-1) We consider a local Cartesian coordinate  $(x, y, z)$ , where x, y, and z correspond to the colatitudinal  $\theta$ , the azimuthal  $\varphi$ , and the radial *r* directions, respectively. We assume that the system is homogeneous in the azimuthal direction  $\partial/\partial \varphi \simeq \partial/\partial y = 0$ , and the mean velocity is only in the azimuthal or toroidal direction as

$$
\mathbf{U} = (U^x, U^y, U^z) = (0, U, 0)
$$
\n(229)

with the velocity shear in the co-latitudinal and radial directions as  $\partial U/\partial x \simeq (1/r)\partial U/\partial \theta$  and  $\partial U/\partial z \simeq \partial U/\partial r$ . The magnetic field is decomposed into the toroidal (azimuthal) and poloidal (radial and colatitudinal) components as

$$
\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}_{\text{tor}} + \mathbf{B}_{\text{pol}}
$$
  
= (0, B<sup>y</sup>, 0) +  $\nabla \times (0, A^y, 0)$   
= (0, B<sup>y</sup>, 0) +  $\left(-\frac{\partial A^y}{\partial z}, 0, \frac{\partial A^y}{\partial x}\right)$ . (230)

Hereafter we drop sufx *y* for the brevity of notation. The evolution equation of the azimuthal magnetic vector potential  $A^{\varphi}(\equiv A)$ , which represents the poloidal magnetic feld, is solved simultaneously with the azimuthal component of the magnetic field  $B^{\theta}(\equiv B)$ , which represents the toroidal or azimuthal magnetic field.

In this Cartesian coordinate system, the simplest Parker equations can be written as

<span id="page-61-1"></span><span id="page-61-0"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial A}{\partial t} = \beta \left( \frac{\partial^2 A}{\partial z^2} + \beta \frac{\partial^2 A}{\partial x^2} \right) + \alpha B, \tag{231}
$$

$$
\frac{\partial B}{\partial t} = \beta \left( \frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial z^2} + \frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial x^2} \right) - \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \frac{\partial A}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \frac{\partial A}{\partial z}.
$$
(232)

Here, for the sake of simplicity, the helicity or  $\alpha$  effect,  $\alpha$ **B**, is included only in the poloidal-field equation ([231\)](#page-61-0). This is because we assume that the  $\Omega$  or differentialrotation effect,  $\nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}) = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{U}$ , is the sole generation mechanism of the toroidal-feld equation ([232\)](#page-61-1).

This simplest system of equations may give an oscillatory poloidal and toroidal magnetic field. In the reality of the solar or stellar dynamo, the transport coefficients  $\alpha$ and  $\beta$  depend on the statistical properties of turbulence, and how much differential rotation  $G \equiv \partial U / \partial z$  is present in the stellar system should be determined by the non-linear interaction between the mean felds and turbulence. However, to understand the basic behavior of the system of Eqs.  $(231)$  and  $(232)$  $(232)$  $(232)$ , it would be meaningful to examine

the behavior of *A* and *B* under regarding  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and *G* as parameters. Suitably chosen parameters  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $G$  provide an oscillatory magnetic field mimicking the solar polar reversal activity. The behavior depends on the values of these parameters. For instance, it was shown through the examination of a cyclonic dynamo-wave behavior that the dynamo wave migrates from the high-latitude toward the low-latitude regions if the radial gradient of the angular velocity multiplied by the  $\alpha$  coefficient is negative. In light of the migration of the sunspot in the equator-ward direction with time, this indicates that the angular velocity in the solar convection zone should satisfy

$$
\alpha \frac{\mathrm{d}\Omega}{\mathrm{d}r} < 0 \quad \left( \alpha \frac{\mathrm{d}\Omega}{\mathrm{d}z} < 0 \right) \tag{233}
$$

(Parker's criterion for the migratory dynamo).

In the framework of the  $\alpha - \Omega$  model, the physics of this criterion can be understood as follows. If the  $\alpha$  coefficient is positive (which corresponds to a negative kinetic helicity) in the northern hemisphere, a magnetic loop is generated by the  $\alpha$  effect so that the electric current density **J** associated with the magnetic loop may be aligned parallel (not anti-parallel) to the toroidal magnetic feld **B** (Fig. [23a](#page-60-1)). The rotation rate decreases in the radially outward direction (*d*Ω∕*dr <* 0. Because of this velocity shear in the *r* direction, the shallower (larger *r*) part of a magnetic loop moves faster in the toroidal or negative  $\varphi$  direction as compared with the deeper (smaller *r*) part, leading to a tilting of the magnetic loop (Fig. [23](#page-60-1)b). As this consequence, the toroidal or  $\varphi$  component of the magnetic field decreases in the smaller  $\theta$  region while the one in the larger  $\theta$  region increases (Fig. [23](#page-60-1)c). Consequently, the pattern of the magnetic feld migrates from the high-latitude (small  $\theta$ ) toward low-latitude (large  $\theta$ ) regions.

#### **5.2 Oscillatory magnetic feld with cross‑helicity efect**

As we see in  $(63)$  of Sect. [2.4](#page-17-0) and  $(139)$  of Sect. [3.2.3,](#page-33-0) in the presence of the mean vortical or rotational motion, a finite turbulent cross helicity ( $W \neq 0$ ) can induce the electromotive force (EMF) in the direction of the mean absolute vorticity. If we include this cross-helicity efect into the EMF expression, the mean magnetic feld equation is written as

<span id="page-62-0"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}) + \nabla \times (-\beta \nabla \times \mathbf{B} + \alpha \mathbf{B} + \gamma \Omega). \tag{234}
$$

where the *y*-related term represents the cross-helicity effect in the EMF. The turbulent cross helicity *W* itself is expected to oscillate and change its sign with the mean magnetic feld. As this consequence, we have to consider the evolution equation of the cross helicity. Following the evolution equation of the turbulent cross helicity, we model the evolution equation for the transport coefficient  $\gamma$  as

<span id="page-62-1"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \gamma}{\partial t} = \beta \nabla^2 \gamma - \tau \mathbf{E}_M \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}
$$
  
=  $\beta \nabla^2 \gamma - \alpha \tau \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} + \beta \tau (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} - \gamma \tau \mathbf{\Omega}^2$ . (235)

Here the first term or  $\beta \nabla^2 \gamma$  arises from the diffusion term  $\nabla \cdot (v_\tau / \sigma_W) \nabla W$  in the cross-helicity transport rate. The fourth or *𝛾*-related term always works for reducing the magnitude of  $\gamma$  since  $-\tau \Omega^2 < 0$ . The third or  $\beta$ -related term contributes to generation of  $\gamma$  through the coupling of the mean electric current with the mean vorticity.

The second or  $\alpha$ -related term  $-\alpha \tau \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}$  plays a very important role in the oscillation of the cross helicity. This term gives us the possibility of the cross helicity generation once the poloidal magnetic feld is generated from the toroidal magnetic field through the  $\alpha$  effect. Since this term plays a key role in the oscillation of the cross helicity, we argue the role of this term further in the context of the solar dynamo.

We assume that the dominant dynamo is cross-helicity effect, and the  $\alpha$  effect is perturbation to the reference state. We write the mean magnetic feld and the mean electric-current density as

$$
\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}_0 + \mathbf{B}_1,\tag{236a}
$$

<span id="page-63-1"></span><span id="page-63-0"></span>
$$
\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{J}_0 + \mathbf{J}_1,\tag{236b}
$$

where  $\mathbf{B}_0$  and  $\mathbf{J}_0$  are the reference state due to the cross-helicity effect, and  $\mathbf{B}_1$  and  $\mathbf{J}_1$ are the perturbation or modulation fields due to the  $\alpha$  effect. Substituting ([236\)](#page-63-0) into the mean induction equation, we have

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_0}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}_0 - \beta \mathbf{J}_0 + \gamma \Omega), \tag{237}
$$

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}_1 + \alpha \mathbf{B}_0 - \beta \mathbf{J}_1). \tag{238}
$$

The reference-field equation  $(237)$  $(237)$  has a special solution for the stationary state as

<span id="page-63-2"></span>
$$
\mathbf{B}_0 = \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{U}.\tag{239}
$$

Substituting  $(239)$  $(239)$  into  $(240)$  $(240)$ , we have the modulation-field equation as



<span id="page-63-3"></span>**Fig. 24** Signs of the cross-helicity production rate  $P_W^{(\alpha)}$  due to the  $\alpha$  effect. **a**  $B_1 \cdot \Omega > 0$  for  $\alpha > 0$  and  $\gamma > 0$  for the northern hemisphere (same for the other cases), **b B**<sub>1</sub> ⋅ **Q** < 0 for  $\alpha < 0$  and  $\gamma > 0$ , **c B**<sub>1</sub>  $\cdot$  **Q** < 0 for  $\alpha > 0$  and  $\gamma < 0$ , **d B**<sub>1</sub>  $\cdot$  **Q** > 0 for  $\alpha < 0$  and  $\gamma < 0$ 

<span id="page-64-0"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t} = \nabla \times \left( \mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}_1 + \frac{\alpha \gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{U} - \beta \mathbf{J}_1 \right). \tag{240}
$$

Here, we approximate the mean velocity **U** in the polar coordinate system $(r, \theta, \varphi)$ by the toroidal velocity as  $U = (U^r, U^{\theta}, U^{\varphi}) \simeq (0, 0, U^{\varphi})$ . We further assume the axisymmetry of **U** and **B**. In the low-latitude region, the radial magnetic feld is assumed to be small ( $B^r \approx 0$ ) and the latitudinal gradient of the toroidal velocity is also small  $\left(\frac{\partial U^{\varphi}}{\partial \theta} \simeq 0\right)$ . Under these approximations, we have

$$
\nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}_1) \simeq \left(0, 0, B_1^r \frac{\partial U^{\varphi}}{\partial r} + B_1^{\theta} \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial U^{\varphi}}{\partial \theta}\right) \simeq (0, 0, 0). \tag{241}
$$

In this case, the modulation-feld equation [\(240](#page-64-0)) has an approximate special solution for the stationary state as

<span id="page-64-1"></span>
$$
\mathbf{J}_1 = \frac{\alpha}{\beta} \mathbf{B}_0 = \frac{\alpha \gamma}{\beta^2} \mathbf{U}.
$$
 (242)

This field corresponds to the modulation poloidal field  $\mathbf{B}_1$  generated from the toroidal field  $\mathbf{B}_0$  by the  $\alpha$  effect.

We first assume that the turbulent cross helicity is positive  $(\gamma > 0)$  in the northern hemisphere. In this case, from  $(242)$ , the direction of the modulation electric-current density  $J_1$  is determined by the sign of  $\alpha$ . They are parallel to the mean velocity U for  $\alpha > 0$ , and anti-parallel to U for  $\alpha < 0$ . Due to this consequence, the modulation magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}_1$  is parallel to  $\Omega$  ( $\mathbf{B}_1 \cdot \Omega > 0$ ) for  $\alpha > 0$  (Fig. [24a](#page-63-3)) and anti-parallel to  $\Omega$  $(\mathbf{B}_1 \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} < 0)$  for  $\alpha < 0$  (Fig. [24b](#page-63-3)). This leads to invariantly negative  $P_W^{(\alpha)} = -\alpha \mathbf{B}_1 \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}$ irrespective of the sign of  $\alpha$  as

<span id="page-64-2"></span>
$$
P_W^{(\alpha)} = -\alpha \mathbf{B}_1 \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} < 0 \quad \text{for} \quad \alpha < 0, \gamma > 0. \tag{243}
$$

On the other hand, if the cross helicity is negative  $(\gamma < 0)$  in the northern hemisphere, we have  $P_W^{\alpha} = -\alpha \mathbf{B}_1 \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} > 0$  irrespective of the sign of  $\alpha$  as

<span id="page-64-3"></span>
$$
P_W^{(\alpha)} = -\alpha \mathbf{B}_1 \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} > 0 \quad \text{for} \quad \alpha < 0, \gamma < 0 \tag{244}
$$

(Fig. [24c](#page-63-3), d).

From [\(243\)](#page-64-2) and [\(244\)](#page-64-3), the production term  $P_W^{(\alpha)} = -\alpha \mathbf{B}_1 \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}$  always generates the turbulent cross helicity whose sign is opposite to the original sign of the turbulent cross helicity. This may lead to the oscillation of cross helicity.

With this consideration, we construct a set of evolution equations constituted by the mean magnetic-feld equation and the cross-helicity equation. We see from [\(234\)](#page-62-0) and [\(235\)](#page-62-1) that the simplifed dynamo equations are written in the form

<span id="page-64-4"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial A}{\partial t} = \beta \left( \frac{\partial^2 A}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 A}{\partial z^2} \right) + \alpha B, \tag{245}
$$



<span id="page-65-1"></span>**Fig. 25** Butterfy diagram (spatiotemporal evolution of the cross helicity and magnetic feld) of the simplifed dynamo model with the cross-helicity efect incorporated. The contours of **a** the turbulent cross helicity represented by *𝛾* [contour range of −0.5, 0.5], **b** toroidal magnetic feld [−0.8, 0.8], and **c** poloidal magnetic feld [−0.2, 0.2]. The solid and dashed contours denote the positive and negative values, respectively. Redrawn from Yokoi et al. ([2016\)](#page-97-0)

<span id="page-65-0"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial B}{\partial t} = \beta \left( \frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial z^2} \right) - \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \gamma - \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \gamma - \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial z^2} \frac{\partial \gamma}{\partial z} \n- \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \gamma}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \gamma}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \frac{\partial A}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \frac{\partial A}{\partial z},
$$
\n(246)

$$
\frac{\partial \gamma}{\partial t} = \beta \left( \frac{\partial^2 \gamma}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \gamma}{\partial z^2} \right) - \alpha \tau \left( \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \frac{\partial A}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \frac{\partial A}{\partial z} \right) \n+ \beta \tau \left( \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \frac{\partial B}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \frac{\partial B}{\partial z} \right) - \gamma \tau \left[ \left( \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \right)^2 \right].
$$
\n(247)

As in ([232\)](#page-61-1), we dropped the  $\alpha$  effect in the toroidal field equation ([246\)](#page-65-0). Note that this system of equations is reduced to the standard Parker equations  $(231)$  $(231)$  and  $(232)$  $(232)$ if the cross-helicity effect vanishes ( $\gamma = 0$ ).

We further assume some symmetries with respect to the equator ( $\theta = \pi/2$ ,  $x = 0$ ) for the mean flow speed U,  $\alpha$ , and the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $\beta$ : the mean velocity speed *U* is symmetric with respect to the equator, the helicity  $\alpha$  is antisymmetric and vanishes at  $\theta = \pi/2$ ,  $x = 0$ , and the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $\beta$  is spatially uniform. As for the radial or  $z$  dependence of  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $\gamma$ , we assume the form of exp(*ikz*), and for the mean velocity,  $\partial U/\partial z = k_u U$ . Then the system of equations  $(245)$  $(245)$ – $(246)$  $(246)$  is reduced to a much simplified form, and we perform an eigenvalue analysis for the normal mode of the simplifed system of equations.



<span id="page-66-0"></span>**Fig. 26** Cross-helicity dynamo model applied to a cool star. Magnetic feld growth of several toroidal modes (upper) and the butterfy diagram (lower) of the toroidal magnetic feld (contour) and poloidal magnetic field  $B^r$  (color). Redrawn from Pipin and Yokoi ([2018\)](#page-95-7)



<span id="page-66-1"></span>**Fig. 27** Spatial distribution of the turbulent cross helicity  $\gamma$  in color and radial magnetic field in contour (left), strength of the toroidal magnetic feld for axisymmetric and non-axisymmetric toroidal magnetic feld (middle), and the axisymmetric toroidal magnetic feld (right). Redrawn from Pipin and Yokoi ([2018\)](#page-95-7)

The spatial distribution of (a) the cross helicity  $\gamma$ , (b) the toroidal magnetic field  $B^{\phi}$ , and (c) the poloidal magnetic field  $B^r$  is plotted against time in Fig. [25](#page-65-1). The plots of (b) the toroidal magnetic field  $B^{\varphi}$  and (c) the poloidal magnetic field  $B^r$  show that magnetic felds are generated frst at the higher latitude region, then migrate to the lower latitude region as time goes by. Comparing three contours, we clearly see the causal relation among  $\gamma$ ,  $B^{\varphi}$ , and  $B^r$ . First a positive cross helicity is generated, then a positive toroidal magnetic feld starts to be generated due to the cross-helicity effect. Then due to the  $\alpha$  effect, a positive poloidal field starts to be generated. Once a positive poloidal magnetic feld is generated, the magnitude of the positive cross helicity starts decreasing, and fnally a negative cross helicity shows up. This negative cross helicity starts generating a negative toroidal magnetic feld, which is the reversal of the toroidal magnetic feld. A polarity reversal cycle proceeds as this.

## **5.3 Cross‑helicity efect in cool stars**

In the framework of the standard  $\alpha - \Omega$  dynamo, whether we can obtain a toroidal magnetic feld and its polarity reversal observed in butterfy diagram depends on the particular confguration of the diferential rotation is required. In the absence of diferential rotation, no toroidal feld can be efectively generated in this framework. However, it is known that the diferential rotation of some fully convective stars is very small. Observations show that the surface diferential rotation of the fast rotating M-dwarf, with a strong magnetic feld of 10 kG strength, is very small (Donati et al. [2008](#page-95-8); Morin et al. [2008\)](#page-95-9). The direct numerical simulations (DNSs) show that the diferential rotation is strongly quenched in the fully convective stars with the generated magnetic field (Browning [2008\)](#page-94-1). In the absence of the differential rotation, a very strong toroidal magnetic feld observed in the fully convective stars cannot be explained by the  $\alpha-\Omega$  dynamo. As we saw in Sect. [2](#page-6-0) for the cross-helicity effect, the essential requisites for the dynamo effect are the rotation (absolute vorticity) and the cross helicity in turbulence. So, this efect is expected to work even in stars with a solid-body rotation. With this expectation, the role of cross-helicity dynamo was investigated in the context of fully convective stars (Pipin and Yokoi [2018](#page-95-7)).

The eigenvalue solutions are analyzed for the system of simplifed equations on the basis of the equation of the mean magnetic feld [\(234](#page-62-0)) and that of the turbulent cross helicity [\(235](#page-62-1)) with the turbulent EMF implemented with the cross-helicity efect. The spherical harmonics decomposition is employed for the toroidal and poloidal magnetic felds and for the turbulent cross helicity. The generated magneticfeld confguration depends on the magnetic-feld generation mechanisms. In the absence of the  $\Omega$  or differential-rotation effect, the helicity and cross-helicity effects, and combination of them are the magnetic-feld generation mechanisms. The results of the eigenvalue analysis for the  $\alpha^2 \gamma^2$  model are shown in Figs. [26](#page-66-0) and [27.](#page-66-1) The time evolutions of a few modes ( $m = 0$ : axisymmetric, otherwise: non-axisymmetric) are shown in Fig. [26](#page-66-0)a. In the  $\alpha^2 \gamma^2$  model, the axisymmetric mode ( $m = 0$ ) can be dominant or comparable with the non-axisymmetric modes. This makes strong contrast with the  $\alpha^2$  and  $\gamma^2$  dynamos, where the non-axisymmetric toroidal magnetic field is more preferable. The time–latitude (butterfly) diagram is shown in Fig. [26](#page-66-0)b, where poloidal (radial) feld at the surface is shown in color and the toroidal feld at the radius of  $r = 0.75R$  (*R*: the surface radius) is shown in contour. The time-latitude evolution of the axisymmetric toroidal feld is similar to the solar one. Figure [27](#page-66-1) shows snapshots of the radial magnetic-feld and cross-helicity distributions in the stationary phase of dynamo. Figure [27](#page-66-1)a shows the cross-helicity distribution at the surface in color, and the radial magnetic-feld distribution at the surface in contour (range of  $\pm$  1 kG). This figure shows the dominance of the non-axisymmetric magnetic feld and the dominance of the non-axisymmetric cross-helicity distribution. The patterns of the axisymmetric and non-axisymmetric magnetic feld are shown in Fig. [27](#page-66-1)b and c.

These results indicate that the axisymmetric magnetic feld, which is not preferred either in the pure  $\alpha^2$  or pure  $\gamma^2$  dynamo model in the rapid solid-body rotation case, can be generated in the  $\alpha^2 - \gamma^2$  dynamo model. The cross helicity produced by the non-axisymmetric magnetic feld contributes to the generation of the axisymmetric toroidal magnetic feld. This fnding provides us with the possibility that the axisymmetric dipole-like magnetic feld at strengths of several kG can be generated by the cross-helicity efect. This is a new dynamo scenario that can be applicable to the generation of an axisymmetric magnetic feld in solid-body rotation cool stars.

## **6 Flow generation by cross helicity**

So far, we have discussed the cross-helicity efect in the context of the magneticfeld induction. The cross helicity is the correlation between the velocity and magnetic feld. As the cross-helicity dynamo discussed in Sects. [3](#page-25-0) and [5](#page-60-0) represents the induction of the magnetic felds by fows, fows may be induced by magnetic felds in the presence of the turbulent cross helicity. In this section, the cross-helicity efect in the linear and angular momentum transport is discussed.

## **6.1 Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses**

The Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses represent the turbulent momentum fux in the mean velocity equation. As the expression of the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses [\(72](#page-19-0)) shows, in addition to the eddy-viscosity efect represented by  $v_K S (= v_K \{S^y\})$ , we have the contribution from  $v_M M (= v_M \{M^y\})$  and  $\Gamma\Omega_*$ (= {Γ<sup>*i*</sup>Ω<sup>*j*</sup>}):

<span id="page-68-0"></span>
$$
\langle u^{\prime i} u^{\prime j} - b^{\prime i} b^{\prime j} \rangle = + \frac{2}{3} K_{\rm R} \delta^{ij} - \nu_{\rm K} S^{ij} + \nu_{\rm M} \mathcal{M}^{ij} + [\Gamma^i \Omega^j_* + \Gamma^j \Omega^i_*]_{\rm D}, \qquad (248)
$$

where the first term on the r.h.s. is the contribution from the diagonal part of  $\mathcal R$ and is expressed by the turbulent MHD residual energy  $K_R [\equiv (\langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle - \langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle)/2]$ . The importance of the turbulent cross helicity in the context of the turbulent MHD residual energy  $K_R$  is discussed in Heinonen et al. [\(2023](#page-95-10)).

In [\(248](#page-68-0)), the eddy viscosity  $v_K$  is linked to the turbulent energy *K*. On the other hand, the transport coefficients  $v_M$  and  $\Gamma$  are linked to the turbulent cross helicity *W* and the gradient of the turbulent helicity  $\nabla$ *H*, respectively. We see from ([248\)](#page-68-0) or [\(72](#page-19-0)) that the turbulent cross helicity  $W = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$ ) coupled with the mean magnetic-<br>Cald sturing A and the inham agreement turbulant bination helicity.  $\nabla U(\sqrt{\nabla} \langle \mathbf{u}' | \mathbf{u}' \rangle)$ field strain **M** and the inhomogeneous turbulent kinetic helicity,  $\nabla H = \nabla \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle$ coupled with the mean absolute vorticity  $\Omega_*$  contribute to the linear and angular momentum transport by counter balancing the eddy viscosity.

The inhomogeneous helicity  $∇H$  effect in the momentum-transport suppression and large-scale fow generation have been theoretically and numerically investigated in hydrodynamic turbulence (Yokoi and Yoshizawa [1993;](#page-97-1) Yokoi and Brandenburg [2016;](#page-96-5) Yokoi [2024\)](#page-96-6). First, the inhomogeneous helicity efect was applied to a turbulent swirling pipe fow. Turbulent swirling fow is an axial pipe fow accompanied by a circumferential fow around the pipe axis. Without the circumferential fow, because of the strong momentum transport by turbulence, the mean axial fow in pipe fow shows a very fat profle in the most part of the fow except for the near wall boundary layer. This is marked contrast with the parabolic axial fow profle in a laminar pipe fow. In the presence of circumferential fow, the mean axial velocity profle shows a dent near the central axis region. In this sense, in the turbulent swirling fow, an inhomogeneous mean fow structure is sustained even in very strong turbulence. The confguration of turbulent swirling fow is simple, but such a simple fow confguration cannot be reproduced by a standard turbulence model with the eddy-viscosity representation. Main reason of this defciency is attributed to the overestimate of the turbulent viscosity efect. This dent profle of the mean axial velocity in turbulent swirling fow has been successfully reproduced by the eddy-viscosity model supplemented by the inhomogeneous helicity  $(\nabla H)$  effect. The suppression of turbulent momentum transport by the inhomogeneous helicity efect was validated with the aid of turbulence model simulation.

More recent validation of the inhomogeneous helicity efect in hydrodynamic turbulence has been performed with the aid of direct numerical simulation (DNS). There, global flow induction in helical turbulence in a uniformly rotating triple periodic box was investigated. In addition to the rotation, an inhomogeneous turbulent helicity is externally injected during the whole period of simulation by forcing. Starting with no mean-fow initial condition, the DNSs show that a global mean fow in the rotation direction is induced by the coupling of the inhomogeneous turbulent helicity and rotation. It is also shown that at the early development stage, where the mean velocity strain is absent, the spatial distribution of the Reynolds stress is in good agreement with the that of the inhomogeneous turbulent helicity coupled with the rotation. At the developed stage, where the mean velocity reaches its stationary state, the balancing between the eddy-viscosity term and the inhomogeneous-helicity term is observed.

These turbulent model simulation and DNSs clearly show that the eddy-viscosity representation of the Reynolds stress is not at all enough, and the inhomogeneous turbulent-helicity efect should be included in the modeling of the turbulent fows lacking mirror symmetry.

#### **6.2 Cross‑helicity efect in momentum transport**

In the MHD turbulence, the cross-helicity effect coupled with the mean magnetic-field strain,  $v_M \mathcal{M} = v_M \{ \mathcal{M}^{\mathcal{Y}} \}$ , enters the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell



<span id="page-69-0"></span>

stresses expression ([248](#page-68-0)). The eddy-viscosity term  $v_K S = v_K \{S^{ij}\}\$ always contributes to destroying large-scale inhomogeneous structures or enhancing turbulent mixing by increasing the efective viscosity. In contrast to the eddy viscosity, the cross-helicity-related effect  $v_M \mathcal{M}$  may contribute to forming large-scale flow structures or suppressing turbulent mixing against the eddy viscosity.

Since the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses are second-order tensors, it is not necessarily straightforward to consider their physical origin and consequence. Here, these properties are considered in terms of a vector called the vortexmotive force or pondero-motive force  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \boldsymbol{\omega}' \rangle$ , which appears in the mean vector appears in the mean vortex equation as

$$
\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial t} = \dots + \nabla \times \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \boldsymbol{\omega}' \rangle + \dots. \tag{249}
$$

By uncurling this, we may guess that the mean velocity **U** is subject to the vortexmotive force as

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} = \dots + \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \boldsymbol{\omega}' \rangle + \dots. \tag{250}
$$

although the actual **U** should be determined by the boundary conditions with an undetermined potential function associated with the uncurling. Note that the vortexmotive force  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle$  and the Reynolds stress  $\mathcal{R}_{K} = {\mathcal{R}_{K}^{ij}} = {\{\langle u'^i u'^j \rangle\}}$  are linked with each other by the exact relation

$$
\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \boldsymbol{\omega}' \rangle^{i} = -\frac{\partial \mathcal{R}^{ij}}{\partial x^{j}} + \frac{\partial K}{\partial x^{i}}.
$$
 (251)

Let us consider a fuid element fuctuating in the plane perpendicular to the mean electric-current density **J** (Fig. [28](#page-69-0)). The magnitude of the mean electric-current density itself is non-uniformly distributed. We assume a case where the velocity and magnetic-feld fuctuations are positively correlated with each other (positive cross helicity:  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle > 0$ ).

Due to a part of the fluctuating Lorentz force,  $J \times b'$ , a velocity fluctuation  $\delta u'$  is induced as

$$
\delta \mathbf{u}' = \tau_J \mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{b}',\tag{252}
$$

where  $\tau_i$  is the timescale associated with the motion induced by the fluctuating Lorentz force. Associated with this velocity fluctuation variation  $\delta \mathbf{u}'$ , the fluctuating vorticity δω' is given as

$$
\delta \omega' = \nabla \times \delta \mathbf{u}'
$$
  
=  $\tau_j \nabla \times (\mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{b}') \simeq \tau_j (\mathbf{b}' \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{J}.$  (253)

This indicates that the fuctuating vorticity is induced if the magnetic fuctuation feels an inhomogeneous mean electric-current density. The direction of the fuctuating vorticity is in the direction of the mean electric current **J**, either parallel or



**Fig. 29** Tokamak's geometry (*R*: major radius of tokamak's torus, *a*: minor radius, *r*: radial coordinate) and the local cylindrical coordinate system  $(r, \theta, z)$ . The toroidal and poloidal directions in the torus geometry correspond to the  $z$  and  $\theta$ - $r$  directions, respectively, in the cylindrical approximation



**Fig. 30** Radial profiles of **a** the safety factor  $q$ , **b** the plasma or toroidal electric-current density  $J^z$ , and **c** the non-uniformity of the mean electric-current density represented by  $J^z \nabla^2 J^z$  in the reversed shear (RS) mode confnement

anti-parallel, depending on the mean electric-current density distribution (inhomogeneity of **J**).

In the combination of the induced velocity and vorticity fuctuations, a largescale flow is induced by the vortexmotive force  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \delta \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle$ . Since the turbulent vortexmotive force  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \boldsymbol{\omega}' \rangle$  may contribute to the generation of the mean velocity in the sense

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} \sim \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \boldsymbol{\omega}' \rangle, \tag{254}
$$

we expect  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \times \delta \boldsymbol{\omega}' \rangle$  induces a large-scale flow. In the presence of the inhomogeneous mean electric-current density  $\nabla$ **J**, a global flow can be generated by the turbulent cross helicity efect as

$$
\delta \mathbf{U} = \tau \langle \mathbf{u}' \times \delta \mathbf{\omega}' \rangle \propto \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle \nabla \times \mathbf{J} = -\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle \nabla^2 \mathbf{B}
$$
 (255)

in the direction of  $\nabla \times \mathbf{J}$ . This result suggests that if the magnetic-field strength is spatially concentrated in some region (in the sense stronger than the surroundings as  $\nabla^2 \mathbf{B} < 0$ , a global flow  $\delta \mathbf{U}$  in the direction parallel to the mean magnetic field **B**
can be induced in the feld-concentrated region if the turbulent cross helicity is positive there ( $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle > 0$ ). In case that the turbulent cross helicity is negative there  $\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle > 0$ ), the induced global flow SII direction is onti perpllel to the mean  $(\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle < 0)$ , the induced global flow  $\delta \mathbf{U}$  direction is anti-parallel to the mean meanotic field magnetic feld.

These arguments indicate that the turbulent cross helicity coupled with the mean magnetic-feld shear may induce a large-scale fow. The direction of generated fow depends on the sign of the local turbulent cross helicity and the spatial distribution of the mean magnetic feld represented by the mean magnetic-feld shear. As we see in [\(255\)](#page-71-0), in the location where the mean magnetic feld is more prominent than the surroundings ( $\nabla^2$ **B** < 0), global flow is induced in the direction parallel to the mean magnetic feld **B** for positive turbulent cross helicity  $(\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle > 0)$ , and in the direction anti-parallel to **B** for negative turbulent cross helicity  $(\langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle < 0)$ . Considering that the cross helicity is correlation between the unless that  $\mathbf{b}$  the unless that the negative order that the velocity and magnetic feld, this result is natural. It is important to note that this global fow generation does not occur for the uniform mean magnetic feld.

#### **6.3 Poloidal fow generation in reversed shear (RS) mode confnement**

In Section [6.2](#page-69-0), we saw that a non-zero cross helicity in turbulence coupled with a non-trivial spatial distribution of mean electric-current density **J**, can induce a global fow. Here we see an example of this efect in the context of the torus fusion plasma (Fig. [29](#page-71-1)) (Yoshizawa et al. [1999](#page-97-0)).

It is known that the confnement of plasma is greatly improved in devices with a reversed or negative magnetic shear in the core region (Fujita [1997;](#page-95-0) Fujita et al. [2001\)](#page-95-1). In this reversed shear (RS) mode, it is also observed an associated poloidal rotation in the minimum *q* region (Fig. [30a](#page-71-2)). Here *q* is the safety factor defined by

$$
q = \frac{rB^z}{RB^\theta},\tag{256}
$$

where *r* and *R* are the minor and major radii and  $B^z$  and  $B^\theta$  correspond to the toroidal and poloidal magnetic feld, respectively.

We approximate the torus geometry by cylindrical coordinate  $(r, \theta, z)$ , where the toroidal and poloidal directions in the torus geometry correspond to  $z$  and  $r$ - $\theta$  directions. We assume the axisymmetry along the central minor axis  $(\partial/\partial \theta = 0)$  of the statistical quantities and neglect *z* dependence  $\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right) = 0$ . Under this assumption, the mean felds are written as

<span id="page-72-0"></span>
$$
\mathbf{B} = (0, B^{\theta}(r, t), B^{z}(r, t)), \qquad (257a)
$$

$$
\mathbf{J} = (0, J^{\theta}(r, t), J^{z}(r, t)), \tag{257b}
$$

$$
\mathbf{U} = (0, U^{\theta}(r, t), U^{z}(r, t)), \tag{257c}
$$

which lead to the Lorentz force

$$
\mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{B} = (B^z J^\theta - B^\theta J^z, 0, 0). \tag{258}
$$

We substitute the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses  $\mathcal{R}$  expression ([248\)](#page-68-0), with the inhomogeneous helicity effect  $\Gamma\Omega$  dropped, into the mean velocity equation. If we approximate that the transport coefficients  $v_K$  and  $v_M$  are locally uniform, and neglect the spatial derivatives of them, the momentum equation is written as

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} = -\nabla \left( P_M + \frac{2}{3} K_R \right) + \frac{(U^{\theta})^2}{r} \mathbf{e}_r + \mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{B} + \nu_K \nabla^2 \mathbf{U} - \nu_M \nabla^2 \mathbf{B},\qquad(259)
$$

where the molecular viscosity  $\nu$  was dropped as compared with the turbulent viscosity  $v_K$ .

The *z* component of the mean vorticity  $\Omega^z$ , which represents the poloidal rotation, obeys

<span id="page-73-0"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \Omega^z}{\partial t} = v_K \nabla^2 \Omega^z - v_M \nabla^2 J^z,\tag{260}
$$

where  $J^z$  is the *z* component of the mean electric-current density. In the absence of the cross-helicity effect  $v_M$ , the mean axial vorticity  $\Omega^z$  decays due to the eddy viscosity  $v_K$  effect. The cross-helicity effect  $v_M$  gives a possibility to generate the large-scale poloidal rotation. We focus our attention on the  $v_M$  effect. Substituting  $v_M$ expression  $(77)$  $(77)$  into  $(260)$  $(260)$  we have

$$
\frac{\partial \Omega^z}{\partial t} = -\frac{5C_\gamma}{7} \frac{K}{\epsilon} W \nabla^2 J^z + R_{\Omega 1},\tag{261}
$$

where  $R_{Q1}$  denotes all the other terms. As for the cross helicity *W* evolution, we assume that the production rate is dominantly due to  $P_W^{(E)}$  ([179\)](#page-46-0), which is approximated as

<span id="page-73-3"></span><span id="page-73-2"></span><span id="page-73-1"></span>
$$
P_W^{(E)} \simeq \beta \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}. \tag{262}
$$

Then the evolution equation of *W* is written as

$$
\frac{\partial W}{\partial t} = \beta J^z \Omega^z + R_W = C_\beta \frac{K^2}{\varepsilon} J^z \Omega^z + R_W,\tag{263}
$$

where  $R_W$  denotes all the other terms. From  $(261)$  $(261)$  and  $(263)$  $(263)$ , the mean vorticity equation is written as

$$
\frac{\partial^2 \Omega^z}{\partial t^2} - \left( -\frac{5C_\beta C_\gamma}{7} \frac{K^3}{\varepsilon^2} J^z \nabla^2 J^z \right) \Omega^z = R_{\Omega 2},\tag{264}
$$

where  $R_{\Omega_2}$  represents all the remaining contributions and is not discussed here.

This indicates that the large-scale vorticity may grow if the quantity in the parenthesis of  $(264)$  $(264)$  $(264)$  is positive as



<span id="page-74-1"></span>**Fig. 31** Spatiotemporal evolution of the poloidal velocity  $U^{\theta}$ . The turbulent cross helicity *W* proportional to the turbulent MHD energy *K* is set in at the cross-helicity onset time ( $t_W = 80$ )

<span id="page-74-0"></span>
$$
\chi_{\Omega}^{2} \equiv -\frac{5C_{\beta}C_{\gamma}}{7} \frac{K^{3}}{\varepsilon^{2}} J^{z} \nabla^{2} J^{z} > 0,
$$
 (265)

where  $\chi_{\Omega}$  denotes the growth rate of  $\Omega^z$ .

In the RS mode confguration, corresponding to the minimum *q* profle in the core region, the radial distribution of the mean electric-current  $J^z$  is given as Fig. [30](#page-71-2)b. The corresponding spatial distribution of  $J^z \nabla^2 J^z$  is given as Fig. 30c. It follows from  $(265)$  $(265)$  $(265)$  that the global poloidal rotation is induced in the region where  $J^z \nabla^2 J^z < 0$ .

The physics of RS mode consists of various properties of plasmas ranging from the macro-physics of MHD fows to the micro-physics of kinetic dynamics. The long-time sustainment of the toroidal electric-current density  $J^z$  profile shown in Fig. [30](#page-71-2)b itself is one of the central problems in experimental studies. Effects of temporal variation of  $J^z$  are beyond the scope of the present analysis. With these points in mind, we apply the present formulation in a restricted situation in the RS mode.

Under the axisymmetric cylindrical geometry adopted in  $(257)$  $(257)$ , we assume that the axial or toroidal electric-current density  $J^z$  is fixed as Fig. [30\(](#page-71-2)b) during the whole period of numerical simulation. This corresponds to assuming that the poloidal and toroidal magnetic felds are fxed during the simulation. With this simplification, we perform a numerical simulation of the  $K - \varepsilon - W$  turbulence model, where in addition to the mean velocity equation with the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses, the equations of the turbulent MHD energy *K*, its dissipation rate  $\epsilon$ , and the turbulent cross helicity *W* are simultaneously solved. The simulation is started with a small amount of turbulence seed in the absence of turbulent cross helicity ( $W = 0$ ) in the entire domain of the simulation:

$$
K_0 = 5 \times 10^{-6}
$$
,  $\varepsilon_0 = 10^{-6}$ ,  $W_0 = 0$  at all r. (266)

The eddy turnover time defined by this initial turbulence field is  $t_0 = K_0/\epsilon_0 = 5$ . At some time (the cross-helicity onset time  $t_W = 80$ ), we externally inject a cross helicity proportional to the turbulent MHD energy  $K(W/K = 0.5)$  in the whole region of *r*. There is no defnite physical meaning of this cross-helicity onset time, but it is the time when the turbulence is well developed after dozens of eddy turnover time, and the choice of initial conditions become weak.

Our numerical simulation shows that before the cross-helicity onset time, no mean velocity is generated at all. However, once the cross helicity is set in, the mean poloidal velocity is generated in the region where  $J^z \nabla^2 J^z < 0$ , which is close to the minimum safety factor  $q$  region (Fig. [31\)](#page-74-1). The poloidal flow is generated in timescale comparable to a few eddy turnover time  $\Delta t \sim 100 - 80 = 20$ .

There is much room for improving the present simplest turbulence model Yokoi et al. ([2008\)](#page-97-1), but this example clearly shows that the presence of the turbulent cross helicity *W* coupled with the non-uniform spatial distribution of the mean electric-current density **J** can induce a global poloidal fow.

### **7 Cross‑helicity efects in magnetic reconnection**

Magnetic reconnection provides an important situation where the cross-helicity efects both in the momentum transport and dynamo play a key role. From the viewpoint of the turbulent transport, the feld confguration of the magnetic reconnection is regarded as a situation where turbulence is self-excited by the inhomogeneities of the magnetic feld and velocity, and the fow and magnetic feld are afected and determined by the turbulent transport. The evolution equation of the turbulent cross helicity ([158\)](#page-43-0) with ([162\)](#page-43-1) and [\(164](#page-44-0)) shows that in the presence of the mean magnetic feld, the turbulent cross helicity is ubiquitously generated by the production mechanism related to the cross-helicity cascade or the transport mechanism related to the asymmetry of Alfvén wave propagation. This suggests that turbulent cross helicity is ubiquitously present in the magnetic reconnection confgurations. The role of the turbulent cross helicity in magnetic reconnection has not been fully investigated in the previous studies. This point will be discussed in this section.

#### **7.1 Necessity of turbulent reconnection**

Magnetic reconnection is the most efficient mechanism to convert the magnetic energy into the kinetic energy and eventually into heat by Ohmic dissipation. It is considered to be one of the main mechanisms to the jet formation, mass ejection, and particle acceleration in astrophysical objects. Magnetic reconnection is a fundamental process also in the Sun, both in the interior and atmosphere. In the former, reconnection of magnetic feld plays an essential role in forming a magnetic feld confguration in dynamo in the convective zone or the tachocline just below

the convective zone, while in the latter, reconnection is the core process for the solar fare and a possible mechanism for the coronal heating.

The simplest reconnection model was proposed by Sweet ([1958](#page-96-0)) and Parker [\(1957\)](#page-95-2). In this Sweet–Parker model, the reconnection is considered to take place in a thin current sheet with the thickness Δ and the width *L* between the oppositely directed reconnection magnetic fields. In the case of uniform density  $\rho = \rho_0$ , the mass conservation gives

<span id="page-76-1"></span><span id="page-76-0"></span>
$$
u_{\rm in}L = u_{\rm out}\Delta,\tag{267}
$$

where  $u_{\text{in}}$  is the inflow speed and  $u_{\text{out}}$  is the out flow speed. If we assume that the all the magnetic energy is converted to the kinetic energy, the conservation of the energy fux is given as

$$
\frac{1}{2\mu_0}b_{\rm in}^2 u_{\rm in}L = \frac{1}{2}\rho_0 u_{\rm out}^2 u_{\rm out}\Delta.
$$
 (268)

From  $(267)$  $(267)$  and  $(268)$  $(268)$ , the outflow speed is evaluated as

<span id="page-76-2"></span>
$$
u_{\text{out}} = \frac{1}{(\mu_0 \rho_0)^{1/2}} b_{\text{in}} \equiv V_{\text{A}},\tag{269}
$$

where  $V_A$  is the Alfvén speed. Namely, the out-flow speed is the Alfvén speed of the reconnection magnetic feld.

One way to evaluate the reconnection rate is to calculate the infow Mach number  $M_{\text{in}}$ : how much inflow  $u_{\text{in}}$  is induced for a given reconnection magnetic field  $b_{\text{in}}$ . Using  $(267)$  and  $(269)$  $(269)$ , the inflow Mach number is expressed as

<span id="page-76-4"></span>
$$
M_{\rm in} = \frac{u_{\rm in}}{V_{\rm A}} = \frac{u_{\rm in}}{u_{\rm out}} = \frac{\Delta}{L}.
$$
 (270)

This suggests that to obtain the more enhanced reconnection rate, the larger  $\Delta$  and the smaller *L* are preferable.

In the Sweet–Parker model, the magnetic feld entering the difusion region  $(\mathbf{u}_{in} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}_{in}$  is diffused solely by the magnetic diffusivity  $\eta \nabla^2 \mathbf{b}_{in}$ . In this case, we have  $b_{\text{in}}u_{\text{in}}/\Delta \sim \eta b_{\text{in}}/\Delta^2$ , resulting in

$$
\Delta = \eta / u_{\text{in}}.\tag{271}
$$

Substituting this into equ.  $(270)$  $(270)$ , we obtain

<span id="page-76-3"></span>
$$
M_{\rm in} = S_{\rm L}^{-1/2},\tag{272}
$$

where  $S_L$  is the Lundquist number defined by

$$
S_{\rm L} = \frac{V_{\rm A}L}{\eta} \tag{273}
$$

(the magnetic Reynolds number with the velocity replaced by the Alfvén speed of the reconnection magnetic feld). In the astrophysical and space physics phenomena,

the Lundquist number is ubiquitously huge (e.g.,  $S_L > 10^{12}$ ). Consequently, the reconnection rate of the Sweet–Parker model ([272\)](#page-76-3) is too slow ( $M_{\text{in}} < 10^{-6}$ ) for elucidating a fast reconnection observed in the astrophysics and space physics. For instance, the reconnection rate in the solar flare is observed to be  $M_{\text{in}} = 10^{-3} - 10^{-1}$ .

To alleviate this drawback of the Sweet–Parker model, several reconnection models, which are potentially able to elucidate fast reconnection, have been proposed. For example, the Petschek model of magnetic reconnection, where the slow shock plays an essential role, realizes a tiny difusion region with efectively reducing *L*.

Turbulence reconnection is one of such approaches. First, turbulent motions of the medium afect the statistical and dynamic properties of magnetic reconnection through the enhanced and inhomogeneous turbulent difusivity. In the presence of turbulence, magnetic-feld lines are subject to meandering motions. As a result, the efective thickness of difusion becomes thicker as well as the enhancement of the efective difusivity. As we see in [\(270](#page-76-4)), this contributes to the enhanced reconnection rate. Two-dimensional direct numerical simulations (DNSs) of the magnetic reconnection in externally injected turbulence suggest that the reconnection rate increases as the level of injected turbulence increases. The reconnection-rate dependence on the Lundquist number  $S_L$ , which is  $M_{\text{in}} \propto S_L^{-1/2}$  for the simplest Sweet–Parker scaling, disappears as the injected turbulence level increases (Loureiro et al. [2009](#page-95-3)). This DNS observation implies that, in the presence of strong turbulence, the reconnection rate depends not on the molecular magnetic diffusivity  $\eta$  but on the non-linear dynamics of turbulence.

Investigating magnetic reconnection with imposing turbulence by external forcing is one way to see the turbulence efects on the reconnection rate. At the same time, it is true that the magnetic feld and velocity confgurations associated with magnetic reconnection are highly nonuniform. In the presence of strong shear of the magnetic and velocity at large scales, represented by the electric-current density and vortical motions, turbulence is expected to be generated by these inhomogeneous largescale felds. Actually, the mean-feld shears contribute to the generation of turbulence as free energy sources through their coupling with the turbulent fuxes such as  $-(\mu'^i u'^j + b'^i b'^j)(\partial U^j/\partial x^i)$ ,  $-(\mathbf{u}' \times \mathbf{b}') \cdot \mathbf{J}$ , etc. In this sense, turbulence is self-generated by the feld confguration associated with the magnetic reconnection, without resorting to the external forcing.

### **7.2 System of model equations of mean and turbulent felds**

In this section, we present a non-linear turbulence modeling approach for treating such a self-generated turbulence and its efects on the magnetic reconnection. In this approach, the reconnection of the large-scale magnetic feld subjected to the turbulent transport is investigated. At the same time, the evolution of the turbulence is simultaneously considered and solved under the infuence of the confgurations of the mean magnetic and velocity felds. Mean-feld equations with turbulent fuxes: The mean-feld equations describing the magnetic reconnection are given by the mass, momentum, energy, and magnetic induction ones as

<span id="page-78-0"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \langle \rho \rangle}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\langle \rho \rangle \mathbf{U}) = 0, \tag{274}
$$

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle \rho \rangle U^i + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \langle \rho \rangle U^j U^i = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \langle \rho \rangle P + \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j} \mu S^{ij} + \langle \rho \rangle (\mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{B})^i - \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j} (\langle \rho \rangle \mathcal{R}^{ij}),
$$
\n(275)

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left\{ \langle \rho \rangle \left[ \frac{P}{\gamma - 1} + \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{U}^2 + \mathbf{B}^2) + \frac{1}{2} \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 + \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle \right] \right\}
$$
\n
$$
= -\nabla \cdot \left\{ \left[ \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - 1} P + \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{U}^2 + \langle \mathbf{u}'^2 \rangle) \right] \langle \rho \rangle \mathbf{U} + \langle \rho \rangle \langle (\mathbf{U} \cdot \mathbf{u}') \mathbf{u}' \rangle + \langle \rho \rangle \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} \right\},
$$
\n(276)

<span id="page-78-1"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = -\nabla \times \mathbf{E}.\tag{277}
$$

From the Ohm's law, the mean electric feld **E** is given as

<span id="page-78-4"></span>
$$
\mathbf{E} = -\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B} + \eta \mathbf{J} - \mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}}.
$$
 (278)

Here the turbulent fluxes  $\mathcal{R}$  and  $\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}}$  are given as ([63\)](#page-18-0) and [\(72](#page-19-1)), respectively.

On the other hand, the equations of the turbulent kinetic energy  $K(156)$  $K(156)$  $K(156)$ , the turbulent cross helicity *W* [\(157](#page-43-3)), and the energy dissipation rate  $\epsilon$  [\(160](#page-43-4)) are given as

$$
\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla\right) K = -\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} \cdot \mathbf{J} - \mathcal{R}^{ij} \frac{\partial U^i}{\partial x^j} - \varepsilon_K + \mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla W + \nabla \cdot \left(\frac{\nu_K}{\sigma_K} \nabla K\right), (279)
$$

$$
\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla\right) W = -\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega} - \mathcal{R}^{ij} \frac{\partial B^i}{\partial x^j} - \varepsilon_W + \mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla K + \nabla \cdot \left(\frac{\nu_K}{\sigma_W} \nabla W\right),\tag{280}
$$

$$
\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla\right) \varepsilon = C_{\varepsilon 1} \frac{\varepsilon}{K} P_K - C_{\varepsilon 2} \frac{\varepsilon}{K} \varepsilon + \nabla \cdot \left(\frac{v_K}{\sigma_\varepsilon} \nabla \varepsilon\right).
$$
 (281)

For the sake of brevity, we consider the simplest possible case with no variable density. Further, we assume there is no helicity effects in  $\mathcal{R}$  and  $\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}}$ . Then they are reduced to

<span id="page-78-6"></span><span id="page-78-5"></span><span id="page-78-2"></span>
$$
\mathcal{R}_{\rm D} = -v_{\rm K} \mathcal{S} + v_{\rm M} \mathcal{M},\tag{282}
$$

<span id="page-78-3"></span>
$$
\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} = -\beta \nabla \times \mathbf{B} + \gamma \Omega. \tag{283}
$$

In this case, the mean-feld equations are reduced to a much simpler form for the mean velocity **U** and magnetic feld **B** as

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} = \mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{\Omega} + \mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{B} + \nu_{\mathbf{K}} \nabla^2 \left( \mathbf{U} - \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{B} \right) - \nabla \left( P + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{U}^2 + \frac{1}{2} \langle \mathbf{b}'^2 \rangle + \frac{2}{3} K_{\mathbf{R}} \right),\tag{284}
$$

<span id="page-79-5"></span><span id="page-79-0"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}) - \nabla \times [\beta \nabla \times \mathbf{B}] + \nabla \times (\gamma \Omega), \tag{285}
$$

where the molecular viscosity and magnetic diffusivity,  $\nu$  and  $\eta$ , have been dropped since their magnitude are much smaller than the turbulent counterparts  $v_K$  and  $\beta$ .

Taking curl of [\(284\)](#page-79-0), we have the mean vorticity equation as

$$
\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial t} = \nabla \times \left[ \left( \mathbf{U} - \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{B} \right) \times \Omega + \nu_{\mathbf{K}} \nabla^2 \left( \mathbf{U} - \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{B} \right) \right] + \nabla \times \left[ \mathbf{F} + \frac{1}{\beta} (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}) \times \mathbf{B} - \frac{1}{\beta} \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t} \times \mathbf{B} \right].
$$
\n(286)

For the purpose of understanding the role of the turbulent cross helicity in momentum transport, we divide a mean-feld quantities into two parts. The velocity **U** and the vorticity  $\Omega$  are divided as

<span id="page-79-3"></span><span id="page-79-2"></span><span id="page-79-1"></span>
$$
\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}_0 + \delta \mathbf{U}, \ \ \mathbf{\Omega} = \mathbf{\Omega}_0 + \delta \mathbf{\Omega}.
$$
 (287)

Here,  $U_0$  and  $\Omega_0$  are the mean fields without the effect of the mean magnetic field **B**, while  $\delta U$  and  $\delta \Omega$  are the mean fields representing the first-order effects of **B** through the turbulent cross helicity. Substituting  $(287)$  $(287)$  into  $(286)$  $(286)$ , we have the zeroth-orderfeld equation as

<span id="page-79-4"></span>
$$
\frac{\partial \Omega_0}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U}_0 \times \Omega_0 + \nu_K \nabla^2 \mathbf{U}_0 + \mathbf{F}), \tag{288}
$$

and the frst-order-feld equation as

$$
\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{\Omega}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times \left[ \left( \delta \mathbf{U} - \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{B} \right) \times \mathbf{\Omega}_0 + \nu_K \nabla^2 \left( \delta \mathbf{U} - \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{B} \right) \right].
$$
 (289)

Equation [\(288](#page-79-3)) represents the evolution of  $\Omega_0$ , which is subject to the turbulent viscosity  $v_K$  and the external force **F**. On the other hand, ([289\)](#page-79-4) represents the evolution



<span id="page-79-6"></span>**Fig. 32** Modulations of the reconnection magnetic feld and the infow velocity due to the cross-helicity effect. Both in the regions with positive turbulent cross helicity  $(\gamma > 0)$  (a) and with negative turbulent cross helicity ( $\gamma$  < 0) (b), the direction of the inflow velocity becomes less perpendicular to the current sheet, and the reconnection magnetic feld **B**in becomes more oblique to the current sheet. Redrawn from Yokoi and Hoshino ([2011\)](#page-97-2)

of  $\delta\Omega$  arising from the turbulent cross-helicity effect. We see from ([289\)](#page-79-4) that, for a given mean vorticity structure  $\Omega_0$ , a particular solution of the stationary state is given as

<span id="page-80-4"></span>
$$
\delta \mathbf{U} = \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{B} = C_{W/K} \frac{W}{K} \mathbf{B}.
$$
 (290)

This solution suggests that a large-scale flow  $\delta U$  is induced in the direction of the mean magnetic feld **B** as an efect of the turbulent cross helicity. The induced-fow direction is parallel to **B** for the positive turbulent cross helicity ( $W > 0$ ), and antiparallel to **B** for the negative turbulent cross helicity ( $W < 0$ ). Note that this meanfow induction will not be observed in the absence of the turbulent cross helicity  $(W = 0)$ .

A similar argument can be done for the mean induction equation ([285](#page-79-5)). If we divide the mean magnetic feld **B** and the mean electric-current density **J** as

<span id="page-80-1"></span><span id="page-80-0"></span>
$$
\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}_0 + \delta \mathbf{B}_0, \quad \mathbf{J} = \mathbf{J}_0 + \delta \mathbf{J}_0,\tag{291}
$$

and substitute  $(291)$  $(291)$  into  $(285)$  $(285)$ , we have

$$
\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_0}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \mathbf{B}_0) - \nabla \times (\beta \nabla \times \mathbf{B}_0)
$$
(292)

$$
\frac{\partial \delta \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{U} \times \delta \mathbf{B}) - \nabla \times \left[ \beta \nabla \times \left( \delta \mathbf{B} - \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{U} \right) \right]
$$
(293)

for the frst-order feld.

Equation [\(292\)](#page-80-1) represents the evolution of the mean magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}_0$ , which is subject to the turbulent magnetic difusivity. On the other hand, [\(293\)](#page-80-2) represents the mean magnetic-field induction  $\delta$ **B** due to the turbulent cross-helicity efect. Equation [\(293\)](#page-80-2) implies that

<span id="page-80-3"></span><span id="page-80-2"></span>
$$
\delta \mathbf{B} = \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{U} = C_{W/K} \frac{W}{K} \mathbf{U}
$$
 (294)

is a particular solution of the first-order magnetic field induction  $\delta$ **B** in the stationary state. This solution  $(294)$  $(294)$  suggests that, for a given magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}_0$ , the mean magnetic field  $\delta$ **B** can be induced by the turbulent cross-helicity effect in the direction of the mean velocity **U**. The direction of  $\delta \mathbf{B}$  is parallel to **U** for positive turbulent cross helicity ( $W > 0$ ), and anti-parallel to **U** for negative cross helicity ( $W < 0$ ). This induction will not be observed in the absence of the turbulent cross helicity ( $W = 0$ ).

The velocity induction ([290\)](#page-80-4) and magnetic-feld induction ([294](#page-80-3)) are natural in the sense that the cross helicity represents the correlation between the velocity and magnetic feld. It is important to remark that these mean-feld inductions are mediated by the cross helicity in turbulent fields  $(W = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle)$ .

These mean-feld inductions may make it possible to enhance the magnetic reconnection through the modulation of the infow velocity and reconnection magnetic feld (Fig. [32\)](#page-79-6). In the presence of the turbulent cross-helicity efect [\(294\)](#page-80-3), the mean magnetic field  $\delta \mathbf{B}_{in}$  is induced. Then the reference reconnection magnetic field without the cross-helicity effect,  $\mathbf{B}_{\text{in}}^{(0)}$ , is modulated to  $\mathbf{B}_{\text{in}}$  as

$$
\mathbf{B}_{in} = \mathbf{B}_{in}^{(0)} + \delta \mathbf{B}_{in} = \mathbf{B}_{in}^{(0)} + \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{U}_{in}^{(0)}.
$$
 (295)

At the same time, due to the turbulent cross-helicity effect  $(290)$  $(290)$ , the mean velocity  $\delta U_{\text{in}}$  is induced. Then the reference inflow without the cross-helicity effect,  $U_{\text{in}}^{(0)}$ , is modulated to  $U_{in}$  as

$$
\mathbf{U}_{\text{in}} = \mathbf{U}_{\text{in}}^{(0)} + \delta \mathbf{U}_{\text{in}} = \mathbf{U}_{\text{in}}^{(0)} + \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \mathbf{B}_{\text{in}}^{(0)}.
$$
 (296)

As Fig. [32](#page-79-6) shows, the infow velocity and the reconnection magnetic feld are modulated by the cross helicity effect. The modulation directions depend on the sign of the turbulent cross helicities. In both cases of (a) positive cross helicity ( $\gamma > 0$ ) and (b) negative cross helicity ( $\gamma$  < 0), the modulated inflow velocities  $U_{in}$  become

less perpendicular to the current sheet than the reference inflow velocity  $\mathbf{U}_{\text{in}}^{(0)}$ , while the modulated reconnection magnetic feld **B**in becomes more oblique to the current sheet than the reference reconnection magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}_{in}^{(0)}$ . This modulation leads to the larger value of  $\Delta/L$  in the reconnection rate formula defined by the inflow Mach number  $M_{\text{in}}$  [\(270](#page-76-4)). As this consequence, the inflow velocity  $U_{\text{in}}$  and reconnection magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}_{in}$ , which are modulated by the turbulent cross-helicity effect, turn out to be suitable for the fast reconnection. This enhancement of reconnection rate is due to the modulation of the feld confguration, and the enhancement rate relative to the reference state depends on the value of the normalized cross helicity  $\gamma/\beta$  or equivalently *W/K*. Evaluation of this effect is seen in Yokoi and Hoshino [\(2011](#page-97-2)).

### **7.3 Numerical simulations of reconnection model equations**

In the previous subsection, we evaluated the mean velocity and magnetic-feld modulations due to the turbulent cross-helicity effect,  $\delta U$  and  $\delta B$ , in an perturbative expansion manner on the basis of the expressions of the turbulent fuxes. The results [\(290](#page-80-4)) and [\(294](#page-80-3)) imply that the turbulent cross helicity contributes to the fast reconnection through the mean-feld modulations. However, to obtain the mean and turbulence feld confgurations in the general situation, we have to solve the system of model equations numerically.

# **7.3.1 Turbulent magnetic reconnection model with evolution of turbulence implemented**

The system of model equations consists of the mean-feld equations [\(274](#page-78-0))-[\(277](#page-78-1)) with the turbulent fuxes (Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses and turbulent electromotive force), ([282\)](#page-78-2) and [\(283](#page-78-3)), implemented, and the equations of the turbulent statistical quantities (turbulent energy, turbulent cross helicity, and turbulent



<span id="page-82-1"></span>**Fig. 33** Reconnected magnetic-field flux  $\Lambda$  [\(300](#page-83-0)) at  $t/\tau_A = 254$  against  $C_t$ . In this figure, the tree domains of reconnection are roughly divided into three by dashed line based on the values of Λ. Redrawn from Higashimori et al. [\(2013](#page-95-4))



<span id="page-82-2"></span>**Fig. 34** Contour plots of the *y* component of the mean electric-current density at  $t/\tau_A = 254$  in the laminar reconnection ( $C_{\tau} = 0.05$ ), the turbulent reconnection ( $C_{\tau} = 1.2$ ), and the turbulent diffusion  $(C_{\tau} = 3.0)$ . The black arrows denote the flow velocity vector. Here,  $L_{\tau}$  is the simulation box size in the *z* or vertical direction. Redrawn from Higashimori et al. [\(2013](#page-95-4))

energy dissipation rate),  $(279)$  $(279)$ – $(281)$  $(281)$ . By solving both the mean fields and turbulence felds, self-consistency of the model simulation including the realizability and non-linear interaction between the mean and turbulence felds are assured (Higashimori et al. [2013](#page-95-4), Yokoi et al. [2013,](#page-97-3) Widmer et al. [2016a](#page-96-1), [b](#page-96-2), [2019](#page-96-3)).

#### *(A) Model simulations with timescale as parameter*

First series of model simulations were performed with the model equations. In these first simulations, instead of solving the  $\epsilon$  Eq. [\(281](#page-78-5)), the dissipation rates of the turbulent energy and cross helicity  $\varepsilon_K$  and  $\varepsilon_W$ , are approximated as

<span id="page-82-0"></span>
$$
\varepsilon = \frac{K}{\tau},\tag{297}
$$

<span id="page-83-1"></span>
$$
\varepsilon_W = C_W \frac{W}{\tau},\tag{298}
$$

where  $C_W$  is a model constant. In the simulation, boundaries in the *x* and *z* directions are both periodic, and a pair of Harris current sheet is assumed. The simulation size is  $L_x \times L_z = 2048 \times 512$ . Hereafter, only the region  $||z||/L_z \le 0.25$  is discussed. (Higashimori et al. [2013;](#page-95-4) Yokoi et al. [2013\)](#page-97-3).

In  $(297)$  $(297)$  and  $(298)$  $(298)$ ,  $\tau$  is the characteristic timescale of turbulence representing the turbulence relaxation, and is set as a constant throughout each simulation. To investigate the relationship between turbulence and reconnection, the value of  $\tau$  is changed from simulation to simulation using a parameter  $C_{\tau}$  defined by

<span id="page-83-2"></span>
$$
\tau = C_{\tau} \tau_0. \tag{299}
$$

Since  $C_{\tau}$  determines the characteristic timescale of turbulence, it controls the dissipation rate of turbulent energy  $\epsilon_K$ . If  $C_{\tau}$  is much smaller than unity ( $C_{\tau} \ll 1$ ), the dissipation rate of the turbulent energy is very large, so the turbulence level becomes very low as time goes by. On the other hand, if  $C<sub>r</sub>$  is much larger than unity  $(C_\tau \gg 1)$ , the dissipation rate of the turbulent energy is very small, then the turbulence level becomes very high. We performed simulations with different  $C_{\tau}$  values. As for the initial turbulent field, we set the turbulent energy  $K = 1.0 \times 10^{-2}$  and  $W = 0$  everywhere.

The efficiency of the reconnection process can be measured by the reconnected fuxes defned by

<span id="page-83-0"></span>
$$
\Lambda = \int_{-L_x/2}^{L_x/2} dx \|B^z\|_{z=0} / (B_0^x L_x).
$$
\n(300)

The reconnected magnetic fluxes  $\Lambda$  against  $C_{\tau}$  are plotted in Fig. [33](#page-82-1). This plot shows that both in the domains  $C_\tau \lesssim 0.5$  and  $2.0 \lesssim C_\tau$ ,  $\Lambda$  is small, while in between these regions, there is a region  $0.5 \leq C_{\tau} \leq 2.0$  the reconnected magnetic-field flux  $\Lambda$ where  $\Lambda$  becomes much larger than the other regions. The small  $C_{\tau}$  region may be called as the *laminar reconnection* region since the magnitude of the reconnection rate  $\Lambda$  is similar to the usual Sweet–Parker reconnection in laminar flows. The level of turbulence there is very low because of very short relaxation timescale of the turbulent energy. On the other hand, the large  $C_{\tau}$  region may be called the *turbulent difusion* region since the magnitude of Λ is very low (even smaller than the laminar reconnection regime) because of the very strong difusion of the magnetic feld everywhere. This strong difusion is seen in the contour plot of the electric-current density in the large  $C_{\tau}$  case ( $C_{\tau}$  = 3.0) in the lower plot of Fig. [34](#page-82-2). The level of turbulence is very high there because of very long relaxation timescale of the turbulent energy. In between these regions, there is a region with much larger  $\Lambda$  (about factor 5 larger), which means higher reconnection rate. This region can be called the *turbulent reconnection* region. The level of turbulence is much higher, but not too higher as the turbulent difusion domain.

In these three regimes, i.e., the laminar reconnection, the turbulent reconnection, and the turbulent difusion regimes, the feld confgurations are fairly diferent with



<span id="page-84-0"></span>**Fig. 35** Spatial distribution of the turbulent MHD energy *K* and cross helicity *W*. The turbulent MHD energy *K* distribution with a finite turbulent cross helicity  $W \neq 0$  (Upper). The turbulent cross-helicity distribution (Middle), and the turbulent MHD energy distribution without the turbulent cross helicity  $W = 0$ . Redrawn from Higashimori et al.  $(2013)$  $(2013)$ 

each other. The contour of *y* component of the mean electric-current density at a time ( $t/\tau_A = 254$ ) in the laminar reconnection ( $C_\tau = 0.05$ ), the turbulent reconnection ( $C<sub>\tau</sub> = 1.2$ ), and the turbulent diffusion ( $C<sub>\tau</sub> = 3.0$ ) regimes are shown in Fig. [34](#page-82-2).

The laminar reconnection regime (upper) shows Sweet–Parker-like feld confguration with some magnitude of the out fow. On the other hand, in the turbulent reconnection regime (middle), the feld confguration is more Petschek-like. Namely, the thin reconnection region with small depth  $\Delta$  is much more concentrated in the vicinity of  $X = 0$ . In this sense, the width L becomes much smaller than the counterpart of the laminar reconnection regime. The out-fow speed is much larger and has some *y* component in the turbulent reconnection regime. This modulation of the fow velocity matches the tendency due to the cross-helicity efect. In the turbulent difusion regime, the feld is distributed in much broader manner due to the strong difusivity due to turbulence. In this regime, we do not have any particular reconnection such as observed in the laminar and turbulent reconnection regimes. As this consequence, no strong outfow is observed in this regime. This can be interpreted that the level of turbulence is too high everywhere and the reconnection magnetic feld is too much difused to be reconnected.

We examined the role of the turbulent cross helicity  $W = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  in the turbu-<br>t means a person partially with the turbulent cross helicity area lent magnetic reconnection, by artifcially putting the turbulent cross helicity zero  $(W = 0)$  throughout the simulation, and compare the result with the counterpart with non-vanishing turbulent cross-helicity case ( $W \neq 0$ ).

The turbulent cross helicity works for localizing the spatial distribution of the turbulent diffusivity  $\beta$  effect in two ways; (i) one is localizing the spatial distribution of  $\beta$  through the localization of the energy through the mechanism mentioned in Sect. [4.2](#page-46-1), and (ii) the other is suppressing the turbulent diffusivity effect  $\beta$ **J** by the cross-helicity effect  $\gamma \Omega$ . We argue these points here.

Figure [35](#page-84-0) compares the spatial distributions of the turbulent MHD energy calculated with the  $K$  equation ([279\)](#page-78-4). The spatial distribution of  $K$  in the case of simultaneously solving the turbulent cross helicity *W* equation ([280\)](#page-78-6) is shown in the upper plot. The corresponding turbulent cross-helicity distribution is shown in the middle plot. As we expected from the production mechanism of *W* associated with the coupling of the mean electric current density **J** and the mean vorticity  $\Omega$ ,  $-\beta \mathbf{J} \cdot \Omega$ , the turbulent cross helicity shows the quadropole-like spatial distribution. The turbulent MHD energy distribution in the case of no turbulent cross helicity ( $W = 0$ )



<span id="page-85-0"></span>**Fig. 36** Schematic picture of the effective localization of the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $\beta$ **J** due to the spatial distribution of the turbulent cross-helicity effect  $\gamma \Omega$ . The spatial distributions of the turbulent magnetic-diffusivity effect  $\beta$ **J** and the turbulent cross-helicity effect  $\gamma \Omega$  (upper). The spatial distribution of the diference between the turbulent magnetic-difusivity efect and the turbulent cross-helicity efect,  $\beta$ **J** −  $\gamma$ **Ω**. Redrawn from Yokoi et al. ([2013\)](#page-97-3)

is shown in the lower plot. In this case, the turbulent cross helicity is artifcially put null  $(W = 0)$  in the whole calculation domain throughout the whole calculation period. We clearly see marked diference in the *K* distributions between the cases with  $W \neq 0$  and with  $W = 0$ . In the presence of turbulent cross helicity  $W \neq 0$ , the turbulent MHD energy *K* is much more concentrated in the vicinity of the X point. The magnitude of *K* near the X point is much higher than the case with no cross helicity. Because the turbulent diffusivity  $\beta$  is basically proportional to the turbulent MHD energy *K*, this result suggests that the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $\beta$  in the presence of the turbulent cross helicity is much more concentrated in the vicinity of the X point with much higher magnitude than the counterpart in the absence of the turbulent cross helicity.

This concentration or localization of the turbulent magnetic difusivity in the vicinity of X point is caused by the *K* generation mechanism due to the *W* inhomogeneity along the mean magnetic field,  $T_K^{(B)} = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)W$  ([175](#page-45-0)). The inhomogeneity of the turbulent cross helicity, corresponding to asymmetry of the Alfvén wave propagations between the parallel and anti-parallel directions, causes the imbalance of the energy fux across the boundaries (see the description in Sect. [4.1](#page-43-5) and Fig. [18](#page-45-1)). Then a strong localization of the turbulent MHD energy can be induced in the inhomogeneous crosshelicity region near the X point.

The other cross-helicity efect for the localization of the efective turbulent difusivity effect may be caused by the suppression of the turbulent diffusivity effect  $\beta$ **J** due to the cross-helicity effect  $\gamma \Omega$ . We see from the EMF expression given by [\(283\)](#page-78-3) that the



<span id="page-86-0"></span>**Fig. 37** The balancing efect in the turbulent electromotive force (EMF). The spatial distributions of (a) the turbulent magnetic diffusivity effect,  $\beta \mathbf{J}^z$ , (b) the turbulent cross helicity effect,  $\gamma \mathbf{\Omega}^z$ , and (c) the diference between the turbulent magnetic difusivity efect and the turbulent cross helicity efect,  $\beta \mathbf{J}^z - \gamma \mathbf{\Omega}^z$ . Redrawn from Yokoi et al. [\(2013](#page-97-3))

effective turbulent magnetic diffusivity effect  $\beta$ **J** can be altered by the turbulent crosshelicity effect  $\gamma \Omega$  as

$$
\beta \mathbf{J} \to \beta \mathbf{J} - \gamma \Omega. \tag{301}
$$

This suggests that in the presence of the turbulent cross helicity  $W = \langle \mathbf{u}' \cdot \mathbf{b}' \rangle$  counted with the mean vertical method of  $\Omega \times \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$ . pled with the mean vortical motion  $\Omega$ (=  $\nabla \times$  **U**), the turbulent magnetic diffusivity may be altered by the cross-helicity efect. Since the spatial distributions of the turbulent energy and the turbulent cross helicity are in general diferent, we have a possibility that spatial localization of the effective turbulent magnetic diffusivity might occur. In a region where the magnitude of the turbulent cross helicity is relatively high, the suppression of  $\|\beta \mathbf{J}\|$  by  $\|\gamma \Omega\|$  must be more effective. In this sense, the turbulent magnetic diffusivity effect is effectively suppressed there. On the other hand, in the region where the magnitude of turbulent cross helicity is relatively low, such a suppression efect must be reduced, resulting in relatively high turbulent magnetic diffusivity effect is sustained there. In Fig.  $36$ , the notion of the effective localization of the turbulent magnetic-difusivity efect is schematically depicted.

Because of the anti-symmetric distribution of the turbulent cross helicity *W* with respect to the coordinate, the turbulent cross-helicity efect should vanish in the vicinity of the X point. The sign reversal of the turbulent cross helicity is represented by the spatial distribution of the  $\gamma$ <sup>|</sup>| $\Omega$ <sup>|</sup>|. This shows marked contrast with the spatial distribution of the turbulent MHD energy *K*, which shows a broad positive-defnite distribution throughout the space coordinate with a maximum magnitude near the X point. Since the sign of the turbulent cross helicity *W* and consequently that of  $\gamma$  is determined by the mean vorticity  $\Omega$ , the spatial distribution of  $\gamma \Omega$  is always positive [or equal to null at the X point] (Fig. [36](#page-85-0) upper). This difference of the spatial distribution of  $\beta J$  and  $\gamma \Omega$  results in the effective localization of  $\beta \bar{J} - \gamma \Omega$ . The strong turbulent magnetic diffusivity is confined to the vicinity of the X point, where suppression efect due to the cross helicity vanishes due to the sign reversal of the turbulent cross helicity.

Figure [37](#page-86-0) shows the spatial distribution of the *z* components of (a) the turbulent magnetic diffusivity effect,  $-\beta$ **J**, (b) the turbulent cross-helicity effect, *γ***Ω**, and (c) their summation,  $-\beta \mathbf{J} + \gamma \mathbf{\Omega}$ .

Refecting the spatial distribution of the turbulent MHD energy *K* represented by Fig. [35](#page-84-0) (upper), the turbulent magnetic difusivity efect −*𝛽***J** is broadly distributed in space including the long tails associated with the tails of the mean-electric current density in the four directions [see the contour of the mean electric-current density shown in Fig. [34](#page-82-2) (middle)]. The cross-helicity effect  $\gamma \Omega$  is relatively weak and vanishes in the vicinity of the *X* point. This is expected from the anti-symmetric distribution of the turbulent cross helicity. Because of the relatively large distribution of the cross helicity in the tail regions, the  $\gamma \Omega$  certainly contributes to reducing the efects of −*𝛽***J** in such tail regions. Due to this reduction efect of the cross helicity, the turbulent magnetic diffusivity effect  $-\beta J$  is effectively localized near the X point region as conceptionally expected in Fig. [36](#page-85-0).

All these calculations of the turbulent MHD energy *K* (and the turbulent magnetic diffusivity  $\beta$ ) and the turbulent cross helicity *W* (and the cross-helicity effect  $\gamma$ )



<span id="page-88-1"></span>**Fig. 38** Temporal evolution of magnetic reconnection rate with variable initial turbulent energy. Temporal evolutions of the magnetic reconnection rate  $\partial_t \phi / (B_0 V_A)$  with different initial turbulent energy levels  $(K_0 = 0.01, 0.05, \text{ and } 0.1)$ . The case without turbulence is also plotted as  $\eta$ -MHD case. Redrawn from Widmer et al. [\(2019](#page-96-3))

were performed by simultaneously solving the *K* and *W* equations. But the timescale of turbulence  $\tau$  was treated as a parameter as  $(297)$  $(297)$  and  $(298)$  $(298)$  with  $(299)$  $(299)$ .

### $(B)$  *Model simulations with*  $\varepsilon$  *equation consistently solved*

To solve the system of turbulence model equations in a self-consistent manner, the equation of the turbulence dissipation rate  $\varepsilon$  has to be simultaneously solved (Widmer et al. [2019\)](#page-96-3). In this work, the timescale of turbulence is determined self-consistently by the non-linear dynamics of turbulence through solving the  $\varepsilon$  equations as well as the turbulent energy *K* equation. The timescale is expressed in terms of the turbulent energy *K* and its dissipation rate  $\epsilon$  by

<span id="page-88-0"></span>
$$
\tau = \frac{K}{\varepsilon}.\tag{302}
$$

In this sense, the level of turbulence is subject to the non-linear dynamics of the interaction between the turbulence and mean felds. In the simulations with this selfconsistent turbulence model, the geometry is defined by the unit vectors  $e^x$  (in-plane direction), **e***<sup>y</sup>* (across the current sheet), and **e***<sup>z</sup>* (along the current sheets). The resolution is  $4 \times 2048 \times 2048$  for a box size of  $0.4L_x/L_0 \times 80L_y/L_0 \times 80L_z/L_0$ , where the normalized length  $L_0$  is the current-sheet half-width. Periodic boundary conditions are assumed, and a pair of Harris-type current sheets are initialized as

$$
\mathbf{B} = B_0 \left\{ \tanh \frac{y + d}{L_0} - \tanh \frac{y - d}{L_0} - 1 \right\} e^z \tag{303}
$$

for an asymptotic value of the magnetic field  $B_0(= 1)$ , Here, *d* is the position of the current sheet. Reconnection is triggered by a divergence-free perturbation



<span id="page-89-0"></span>**Fig. 39** Spatial distributions of **a** turbulent MHD energy *K*, **b** turbulent cross helicity *W*, **c** turbulent MHD energy dissipation rate  $\epsilon$  (second right), and **d** turbulent timescale  $\tau = K/\epsilon$ . Spatial profiles at the saturated magnetic reconnection at time  $t/\tau_A = 150$ . The initial turbulence level is  $K_0 = 0.01$ , and the magnetic diffusivity is  $\eta = 10^{-5}$ . Redrawn from Widmer et al. ([2019\)](#page-96-3)

$$
\delta \mathbf{B} = \frac{b_p}{b_0} \sum_{i=1}^{10} \sin \frac{2\pi i z}{L_x} \mathbf{e}^y
$$
 (304)

with  $b_p/b_0 = 10^{-3}$ . The initial zero flow condition gives the zero initial cross helicity.

The reconnection rate is calculated on the basis of the reconnected magnetic fux defned by

$$
\frac{\phi}{B_0 L_0} = \int_{z_0}^{z_x} \frac{B^y \mathrm{d}z}{B_0 L_0} \tag{305}
$$

where  $z_0$  is the "O" point location in the center of a magnetic island,  $z<sub>X</sub>$  is the reconnection "X" point location,  $B_0$  is the asymptotic magnitude of reconnection magnetic field and  $L_0$  is the current-sheet half width given in [\(303](#page-88-0)). The integration over *dz* is carried out along the center of the current sheet  $y = \pm d$ . The magnetic reconnection rate is calculated as the time derivative of the reconnection fux as

$$
M_{\rm A} = \frac{\partial_t \phi}{B_0 L_0 / \tau_{\rm A}},\tag{306}
$$

where  $\tau_A$  is the Alfvén time associated with the reconnection magnetic field. Temporal evolutions of the reconnection rate are examined with several initial levels of turbulence (Fig.  $38$ ). The reconnection rate defined by the reconnected magnetic flux per time,  $\partial_t \phi / (B_0 V_A)$ , is plotted against time  $t / \tau_A$  for various initial turbulence levels  $(K_0 = 0.01, 0.05,$  and 0.1). Irrespective of the initial turbulence level, all the cases reach the same level of reconnection rate, which is much higher than the resistive MHD case with no turbulence ( $\eta$ -MHD case). This is marked contrast with the previous simulations with the turbulence timescale  $\tau$  being as a parameter (Fig. [33\)](#page-82-1),



<span id="page-90-0"></span>**Fig. 40** Budgets of turbulent MHD energy *K* (upper), cross helicity *W* (middle), and energy dissipation rate  $\epsilon$  (lower) are plotted along the current sheet including the X point. The budgets are plotted at time  $\tau/\tau_A = 120$ , with the magnetic diffusivity  $\eta = 10^{-4}$ . Redrawn from Widmer et al. [\(2019](#page-96-3))

where the reconnection rate strongly depends on the level of turbulence determined by the relaxation timescale.

In a self-consistent turbulence model, where the turbulence energy dissipation rate  $\epsilon$  is solved as well as the turbulent MHD energy  $K$ , the evolution of turbulence is subject to the non-linear dynamics of the turbulence itself. The timescale of turbulence is self-adjusted and the reconnection rate reaches at the same higher level (fast reconnection) irrespective of the initial turbulence level. This suggests that, if the turbulence is generated by inhomogeneity of the reconnection magnetic feld and its energy is dissipated by the non-linear dynamics of itself, the turbulence level attains to a level which is appropriate to get a fast magnetic reconnection. The reconnection rate does not depend on the initial level of turbulence. This situation is entirely diferent from the case where the turbulence energy is injected by external forcing, or the case with the energy dissipation rate  $\epsilon$  is given as a parameter.

However, the role of turbulent cross helicity in the magnetic reconnection is considered to be similar to the cases with the timescale given as a parameter. The turbulent cross helicity self-generated by the mean-feld inhomogeneities contributes to localize the turbulent difusivity efect, leading to a fast reconnection. This point can be seen in the spatial distributions of the turbulent MHD energy  $K$ , the turbulent cross helicity *W*, the turbulent MHD energy dissipation rate, and the turbulence timescale  $\tau = K/\epsilon$  in Fig. [39](#page-89-0).

The spatial distributions of *K* and *W* are basically similar to the results in the simulations with the turbulence timescale  $\tau$  given as a parameter (Fig. [35\)](#page-84-0). The spatial

distribution of  $\epsilon$  is similar to the counterpart for *K*. This reflects the similarity of the  $\epsilon$  equation ([281\)](#page-78-5) in form with the *K* equation ([279\)](#page-78-4). However, the spatial distribution of the turbulence timescale defined by  $\tau = K/\varepsilon$  is not uniform at all. This makes a certain difference from the case with constant parameter  $\tau$ .

The production, dissipation, and transport rates of the turbulent statistical quantities, *K*, *W*, and  $\varepsilon$ , obey the evolution equations ([279\)](#page-78-4), ([280\)](#page-78-6) and ([281\)](#page-78-5), respectively. The budgets of *K*, *W* and  $\varepsilon$  are shown in Fig. [40](#page-90-0).

In a similar way as we saw in the case with a parameter  $\tau$ , the generation of the turbulent MHD energy *K* is mainly attributed to the production rate  $P_{K,1} = -\beta \mathbf{J}^2$ in [\(279](#page-78-4)) (Fig. [40](#page-90-0), upper). In addition, the transport term associated with the turbulent cross-helicity inhomogeneity along the mean magnetic field,  $T_K = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)W$  in [\(279](#page-78-4)), contributes to the localization of the *K* distribution by the negative production of K at the tail region of the  $P_{K,1}$ . This is one of the prominent effects of the turbulent cross helicity in enhancing the magnetic reconnection.

The generation of the turbulent cross helicity *W* is mainly attributed to the production rate associated with the coupling of the mean vorticity and mean electriccurrent density  $P_{W_1} = -\beta \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{\Omega}$  in ([280\)](#page-78-6) (Fig. [40](#page-90-0), middle). This effect is to some extent canceled by the transport term associated with the inhomogeneity of the turbulent MHD energy along the mean magnetic field,  $T_w = (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla)K$  in ([280\)](#page-78-6).

The turbulent cross helicity is ubiquitously present around the reconnection point because of the production mechanisms of the turbulent cross helicity associated with the reconnection magnetic feld **B** and its spatial variations. This ubiquitous presence of the turbulent cross helicity around the reconnection point provides an environment for the cross helicity to work for the fast magnetic reconnection, through the cross-helicity efects in magnetic-feld induction and the momentum and angular momentum transport. The turbulent cross helicity coupled with the mean velocity shear induces a mean magnetic feld, and the turbulent cross helicity coupled with the mean magnetic-feld shear induces a mean velocity. These cross-helicity efects are considered to contribute to the enhancement of the magnetic reconnection rate by changing the confgurations of the reconnection magnetic-feld and velocity confgurations.

However, we should note that, in contrary to the numerical simulations presented above, the non-trivial cross-helicity confguration such as the quadrupole distribution is not reported in some numerical simulation (Nowak et al. [2022\)](#page-95-5). This diference should be related to the turbulence generation mechanism. In our numerical setup discussed above, the turbulence is self-generated by the inhomogeneous magnetic feld and velocity confguration. In such a case, the non-trivial turbulent crosshelicity distribution is naturally realized. This is fairly diferent from the case where turbulence is homogeneously generated by external forcing. To clearly understand the role of cross helicity in the fast reconnection in turbulence, we have to further investigate the conditions for the turbulent cross-helicity production in the turbulent reconnection.



<span id="page-92-0"></span>**Fig. 41** Self-consistent turbulence modeling of the mean and turbulence felds. The balance between the difusion and anti-difusion efects should be also treated in a self-consistent closure framework

# **8 Concluding remarks**

From the viewpoint of transport, the primary efect of turbulence is enhancing the process of mixing. The eddy viscosity representation of the Reynolds stress in the mean momentum equation and the turbulent magnetic difusivity in the turbulent EMF in the mean magnetic-feld equation are representative turbulence efects, which enhance the process of mixing. On the other hand, we observe several amazing persistent large-scale structures and their generation in extremely strong turbulence. To elucidate such large-scale structures in turbulence, we need some mechanisms other than the eddy viscosity and difusivity. These other mechanisms should contribute to the counter difusion efect that counterbalances the turbulent viscosity and difusion efects and suppresses the enhanced transport. The efects of pseudoscalars such as the kinetic, current, and cross helicities, as well as the non-equilibrium efect associated with the coherent fuctuation motions (plumes, thermals, and jets), are the representative candidates for the counter difusion mechanisms.

In this paper, with the aid of a multiple-scale renormalized perturbation expansion theory, combination of the multiple-scale analysis and the direct interaction approximation (DIA), the analytical expressions of the turbulent EMF and the Reynolds and turbulent Maxwell stresses are systematically obtained from the fundamental equations. As the direct consequence of the introduction of the non-mirror symmetric components of the lowest order (or background) fuctuation felds, the

pseudo-scalar statistical quantities as well as the pure-scalar ones, enter the expression of the turbulent fuxes.

The importance of the cross-helicity efects in the magnetic-feld induction and momentum transport is stressed. In addition to the kinetic- and current-helicity effects in dynamo ( $\alpha$  effect) and the inhomogeneous kinetic-helicity effect in vortex dynamos, the cross-helicity efects enter the expressions of the turbulent EMF and the Reynolds and Maxwell stresses. These pseudo-scalar efects are expected to represent the counter- or anti-difusion efect that balances with the eddy difusivity and viscosity efects, which represent the enhancement of the efective transport due to turbulence.

trub. mag.

\ndiffusivity

\n
$$
\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{M}} = \begin{array}{c}\n-\eta_{\mathbf{T}}\mathbf{J} & +\gamma\Omega & +\alpha\mathbf{B} \\
\hline\n\text{cross-hel.} & \text{hel.} \\
\text{effect} & \text{effect}\n\end{array}
$$
\n(307)

turb.  
\nviscosity  
\n
$$
\mathcal{R}_{\rm D} = -v_{\rm K} \mathcal{S}_{\rm D} \underbrace{+v_{\rm M} \mathcal{M}_{\rm D}}_{\text{cross-hel.}} + (\Gamma \Omega_{*})_{\rm D},
$$
\n(308)  
\n
$$
\underbrace{\qquad \qquad}_{\text{cross-hel.}} + (v_{\rm M} \mathcal{S}_{\rm D})_{\text{on}} + (v_{\rm M} \mathcal{S}_{\rm D})_{\text{on}} + (v_{\rm M} \mathcal{S}_{\rm D})_{\text{on}}}
$$

where the suffix D denotes the deviatoric or traceless part of a tensor.

Another point stressed in this article is the importance of a self-consistent and systematic treatment of the turbulence effect in the mean-field equations. In a selfconsistent description of turbulent phenomena, the mutual interaction between the mean and turbulence felds should be simultaneously and fully considered (Fig. [41\)](#page-92-0). In other words, this point is called the closure problem, and this has not been fully explored in the previous studies of dynamos and momentum transport. For instance, in some dynamo studies, quenching or saturation of dynamo efect has been discussed by considering each efect of the mean magnetic feld, rotation, difusivity, etc. However, such arguments are often based on picking up some specifc terms (mean magnetic feld, rotation, molecular difusivity, viscosity, etc.). So, the validity of such quenching arguments highly depends on specifc confgurations considered.

The transport coefficients in the expressions of the turbulent fluxes are determined by the statistical properties and dynamical behavior of the turbulence. We performed a multiple-scale renormalized perturbation expansion analysis on the MHD turbulence. We systematically obtained the expressions for the turbulent fuxes in the mean-field equations, including the analytical expressions of the transport coefficients. On the basis of these analytical expressions, the coefficients are represented by appropriate one-point turbulent statistical quantities such as the turbulent energy, kinetic, current, and cross helicities. By simultaneously considering and solving the transport equations of the statistical quantities, as well as the mean-feld equations, a self-consistent system of model equations was constructed. In this framework, the turbulent transport coefficients in the mean-field equations are determined through the transport equations of the turbulent statistical quantities. These transport equations include the production, dissipation, and transport rates of the turbulent statistical quantities, which are subject to the mean-feld inhomogeneities. As such, this turbulence model can self-consistently determine the evolutions of the mean and fuctuation felds. In this sense, the present approach provides a new framework that can treat global structure formation in extremely strong turbulence far beyond the previous heuristic turbulence modeling approach (Yokoi [2018c](#page-96-4)).

**Acknowledgements** The author would like to thank Pat Diamond for inviting him to write this article on the topic of the cross-helicity efects. This work was supported by the Japan Society of the Promotion of Science (JSPS) Grants-in-Aid for Scientifc Research JP18H01212 and JP23H01199. Part of this work was done during his stay at Nordic Institute for Theoretical Physics (NORDITA) at the program "Magnetic Field Evolution in Low Density or Strongly Stratifed Plasmas" in May and June 2022 and the program "Towards a Comprehensive Model of the Galactic Magnetic Field" in April 2023. The author also would like to thank the Isaac Newton Institute for Mathematical Sciences (INI), Cambridge, for support and hospitality during the program "Frontiers in dynamo theory: from the Earth to the stars (DYT2)" where work on this paper was undertaken. This work was supported by EPSRC grant no EP/R014604/1.

**Funding** Open access funding provided by The University of Tokyo.

**Data availability** Data from the numerical simulations and analysis presented in this paper are available from the author upon reasonable request.

#### **Declarations**

**Confict of interest** The author has no confict of interest.

**Open Access** This article is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License, which permits use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons licence, and indicate if changes were made. The images or other third party material in this article are included in the article's Creative Commons licence, unless indicated otherwise in a credit line to the material. If material is not included in the article's Creative Commons licence and your intended use is not permitted by statutory regulation or exceeds the permitted use, you will need to obtain permission directly from the copyright holder. To view a copy of this licence, visit [http://creativecommons.org/](http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/) [licenses/by/4.0/.](http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/)

## **References**

- S.A. Balbus, J.F. Hawley, Instability, turbulence, and enhanced transport in accretion disks. Rev. Mod. Phys. **70**, 1–53 (1998)
- A. Brandenburg, Stellar mixing length theory with entropy rain. Astrophys. J. **832**, 6 (2016)
- M.K. Browning, Simulation of dynamo action in fully convective stars. Astrophys. J. **676**, 1262–1280 (2008).<https://doi.org/10.1086/527432>
- M. Dobrowolny, A. Mangeney, P. Veltri, Fully developed anisotropic hydromagnetic turbulence in interplanetary space. Phys. Rev. Lett. **45**, 144 (1980a)
- M. Dobrowolny, A. Mangeney, P. Veltri, Properties of magnetohydrodynamic turbulence in the solar wind. Astron. Astrophys. **83**, 26 (1980b)
- J.-F. Donati, J. Morin, P. Petit, X. Delfosse, T. Forveille, F. Aurières, R. Cabanac, B. Dintrans, R. Fares, T. Gastine, M.M. Jardine, F. Lignières, F. Paletou, J.C. Ramires Velez, S. Thèado, Large-scale magnetic topologies of early M dwarfs. Mon. Not. R. Astron. Soc. **390**, 545–560 (2008). [https://doi.org/](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2008.13799.x) [10.1111/j.1365-2966.2008.13799.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2966.2008.13799.x)
- L.D.V. Duarte, J. Wicht, M.K. Browning, T. Gastine, Helicity inversion in spherical convection as a means for equatorward dynamo wave propagation. Mon. Not. R. Astron. Soc. **456**, 1708–1722 (2016)
- <span id="page-95-0"></span>T. Fujita, Efects of negative magnetic shear in fusion plasma confnement (1). A review of experimental studies. J. Plasma Fusion Res. **73**, 549 (1997)
- <span id="page-95-1"></span>T. Fujita, T. Oikawa, T. Suzuki, S. Ide, Y. Sakamoto, Y. Koide, T. Hatate, O. Naito, A. Isayama, N. Hayashi, H. Shirai, Plasma equilibrium and confnement in a tokamak with nearly zero central current density in JT-60U. Phys. Rev. Lett. **87**, 245001 (2001)
- G. Green, D.G. Vlaykov, J.P. Mellado, M. Wilczek, Resolved energy budget of superstructures in Reyleigh–Bénard convection. J. Fluid Mech. **887**, A21 (2020). <https://doi.org/10.1017/jfm.2019.1008>
- F. Hamba, Euclidean invariance and weak-equilibrium condition for the algebraic Reynolds stress model. J. Fluid Mech. **569**, 399–408 (2006).<https://doi.org/10.1017/S0022112006003041>
- F. Hamba, H. Sato, Turbulent transport coefficients and residual energy in mean-field dynamo theory. Phys. Plasmas **15**, 022302 (2008). <https://doi.org/10.1063/1.2839767>
- S.M. Hanasoge, T.L. Duvall, K.R. Sreenivasan, Anomalously weak solar convection. PNAS **109**, 11928 (2012)
- S. Hanasoge, L. Gizon, K.R. Sreenivasan, Seismic sounding of convection in the Sun. Annu. Rev. Fluid Mech. **48**, 191–217 (2016). [https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-fuid-122414-034534](https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-fluid-122414-034534)
- R.A. Heinonen, P.H. Diamond, M.F.D. Katz, G.E. Ronimo, Generation of momentum transport in weakly turbulent *𝛽*-plane magnetohydrodynamics. Phys. Rev. E **107**, 025202 (2023). [https://doi.org/10.](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevE.107.025202) [1103/PhysRevE.107.025202](https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevE.107.025202)
- <span id="page-95-4"></span>K. Higashimori, N. Yokoi, M. Hoshino, Explosive turbulent magnetic reconnection. Phys. Rev. Lett. **110**, 255001 (2013).<https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.110.255001>
- M. Hossain, P.C. Gray, D.H. Pontius Jr., W.H. Matthaeus, S. Oughton, Phenomenology for the decay of energy-containing eddies in homogeneous MHD turbulence. Phys. Fluids **7**, 2886 (1995)
- F. Krause, K.-H. Rädler, *Mean-Field Magnetohydrodynamics and Dynamo Theory* (Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1980)
- <span id="page-95-3"></span>N.F. Loureiro, D.A. Uzdensky, A.A. Schekochihin, T.A. Cowley, Turbulent magnetic reconnection in two dimensions. Mon. Not. R. Astron. Soc. **399**, L146–L150 (2009)
- W.H. Matthaeus, S. Oughton, D.H. Pontius Jr., Y. Zhou, Evolution of energy containing turbulent eddies in the solar wind. J. Geophys. Res. **99**, 19267 (1994)
- K.A. Mizerski, N. Yokoi, A. Brandenburg, Cross-helicity effect on *a*-type dynamo in non-equilibrium turbulence. J. Plasma Phys. **89**, 905890412 (2023). <https://doi.org/10.1017/S0022377823000545>
- K. Mofatt, *Magnetic Field Generation in Electrically Conducting Fluids* (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1978)
- K. Mofatt, E. Dormy, *Self-exciting Fluid Dynamos* (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2019)
- J. Morin, J.-F. Donati, P. Petit, X. Delfosse, T. Forveille, L. Albert, M. Auriére, R. Cabanac, B. Dintrans, R. Fares, T. Gastine, M.M. Jardine, P.F. Lingnières, J.C. Ramirez Velez, S. Thèado, Large-scale magnetic topologies of mid M dwarfs. Mon. Not. R. Astron. Soc. **390**, 567–581 (2008)
- <span id="page-95-5"></span>N. Nowak, G. Kowal, D.A. Falceta-Goncalves, Generation and efects of electromotive force in turbulent stochastic reconnection. Phys. Plasmas **28**, 062310 (2022)
- E.N. Parker, Hydromagnetic dynamo models. Astrophys. J. **121**, 293–314 (1955)
- <span id="page-95-2"></span>E.N. Parker, Sweet's mechanism for merging magnetic felds in conducting fuids. J. Fluid Mech. **62**, 509– 520 (1957)
- V. Pipin, N. Yokoi, Generation of a large-scale magnetic feld in a convective full-sphere cross-helicity dynamo. Astrophys. J. **859**, 18–111 (2018).<https://doi.org/10.3847/1538-4357/aabae6>
- A. Pouquet, N. Yokoi, Helical fuid and (Hall)-MHD turbulence: a brief review. Philos. Trans. R. Soc. **A380**, 20210087 (2022).<https://doi.org/10.1098/rsta.2021.0087>
- A. Pouquet, U. Frisch, J. Léorat, Strong MHD helical turbulence and the nonlinear dynamo efect. J. Fluid Mech. **77**, 321–354 (1997)
- B. Proxauf, Observations of large-scale solar fows. Dissertation, Georg-August Universität Göttingen (2021).<https://doi.org/10.53846/goediss-8502>. [arXiv:2106.07251](http://arxiv.org/abs/2106.07251)
- K. Rahbarnia, B.P. Brown, M.M. Clark, E.J. Kaplan, M.D. Norberg, A.M. Rasmus, N.Z. Taylor, C.B. Forest, F. Jenko, A. Limone, Direct observation of the turbulent emf and transport of magnetic feld in a liquid sodium experiment. Astrophys. J. (2012). <https://doi.org/10.1088/0004-637X/759/2/80>
- A. Ranjan, P. Davidson, The spatial segregation of kinetic helicity in geodynamo simulations, Chap. 16, in *Helicities in Geophysics, Astrophysics, and Beyond (AGU Books*. ed. by K. Kuzanyan, N. Yokoi, M. Georgoulis, R. Stepanov (Wiley, New York, 2024). <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781119841715.ch16>
- M.P. Rast, Compressible plume dynamics and stability. J. Fluid Mech. **369**, 125–149 (1998)
- I. Rogachevskii, N. Kleeorin, Nonlinear turbulent magnetic difusion and mean-feld dynamo. Phys. Rev. E **64**, 056307 (2001)
- I.E. Sarris, H. Jeanmart, D. Carati, G. Winckelmans, Box-size dependence and breaking of translational invariance in the velocity statistics computed from three-dimensional turbulent Kolmogorov fows. Phys. Fluids **19**, 095101 (2007)
- J. Schumacher, K.R. Sreenivasan, Colloquium: Unusual dynamics of convection in the Sun. Rev. Mod. Phys. **92**, 041001 (2020).<https://doi.org/10.1103/RevModPhys.92.041001>
- M. Schüssler, A. Ferriz-Mas, Magnetic fux tubes and the dynamo problem, in *Advances in Nonlinear Dynamos*. ed. by A. Ferriz-Mas, M. Nunez (Taylor and Francis, London, 2003), pp.123–146
- N.I. Shakura, R.A. Sunyaev, Black holes in binary systems: observational appearance. Astron. Astrophys. **24**, 337–355 (1973)
- T. Stribling, W.H. Matthaeus, Relaxation processes in a low-order three-dimensional magnetohydrodynamics model. Phys. Fluids B **3**, 1848 (1991)
- S. Sur, A. Brandenburg, The role of the Yoshizawa efect in the Archontis dynamo. Mon. Not. R. Astron. Soc. **399**, 273–280 (2009)
- <span id="page-96-0"></span>P.A. Sweet, The neutral point theory of solar fares, in *IAU Symposium No. 6, Electromagnetic Phenomena in Cosmical Physics* (1958), p. 123–134
- J.-L. Thifeault, Covariant time derivatives for dynamical systems. J. Phys. A Math. Gen. **34**, 5875–5885 (2001).<https://doi.org/10.1088/0305-4470/34/29/309>
- A.C. Ting, D. Montgomery, W.H. Matthaeus, Turbulent relaxation processes in magnetohydrodynamics. Phys. Fluids **29**, 3261 (1986)
- S.M. Tobias, The turbulent dynamo. J. Fluid Mech. **912**, P1 (2021). <https://doi.org/10.1017/jfm.2020.1055>
- G.M. Vasil, K. Julien, A. Featherstone, Rotation suppresses giant-scale solar convection. PNAS **118**, 31 (2021).<https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2022518118>
- <span id="page-96-1"></span>F. Widmer, J. Büchner, N. Yokoi, Sub-grid-scale description of turbulent magnetic reconnection in magnetohydrodynamics. Phys. Plasmas **23**, 04231 (2016a).<https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4947211>
- <span id="page-96-2"></span>F. Widmer, J. Büchner, N. Yokoi, Characterizing plasmoid reconnection by turbulence dynamics. Phys. Plasmas **23**, 092304 (2016b). <https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4962694>
- <span id="page-96-3"></span>F. Widmer, J. Büchner, N. Yokoi, Analysis of fast turbulent reconnection with self-consistent determination of turbulence timescale. Phys. Plasmas **26**, 102112 (2019).<https://doi.org/10.1063/1.5109020>
- N. Yokoi, Cross helicity and related dynamo. Geophys. Astrophys. Fluid Dyn. **107**, 114–184 (2013). [https://](https://doi.org/10.1080/03091929.2012.754022) [doi.org/10.1080/03091929.2012.754022](https://doi.org/10.1080/03091929.2012.754022)
- N. Yokoi, Electromotive force in strongly compressible magnetohydrodynamic turbulence. J. Plasma Phys. (2018a).<https://doi.org/10.1017/S0022377818000727>
- N. Yokoi, Mass and internal-energy transports in strongly compressible magnetohydrodynamic turbulence. J. Plasma Phys. (2018b).<https://doi.org/10.1017/S0022377818001228>
- <span id="page-96-4"></span>N. Yokoi, Turbulent dynamos beyond the heuristic modeling: helicities and density variance, *AIP Conference Proceedings* 1993, 020010-1-12 (2018c). <https://doi.org/10.1063/1.5048720>
- N. Yokoi, Turbulence, transport and reconnection, Chap. 6 in *Topics in Magnetohydrodynamic Topology, Reconnection and Stability Theory, CISM International Centre for Mechanical Sciences 591*, ed. D. MacTaggart, A. Hillier (Springer, Cham, 2020), p. 177–265. [https://doi.org/10.1007/](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-16343-3-6) [978-3-030-16343-3-6](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-16343-3-6)
- N. Yokoi, Non-equilibrium turbulent transport in convective plumes obtained from closure theory. Atmosphere (2023). <https://doi.org/10.3390/atmos14061013>
- N. Yokoi, Transport in helical fuid turbulence, Chap. 3, in *Helicities in Geophysics, Astrophysics, and Beyond*. ed. by K. Kuzanyan, N. Yokoi, M. Georgoulis, R. Stepanov (AGU Books, Wiley, New York, 2024).<https://doi.org/10.1002/9781119841715.ch03>
- N. Yokoi, G. Balarac, Cross-helicity efects and turbulent transport in magnetohydrodynamic fow. J. Phys. Conf. Ser. (2011). <https://doi.org/10.1088/1742-6596/318/7/072039>
- N. Yokoi, A. Brandenburg, Large-scale fow generation by inhomogeneous helicity. Phys. Rev. E (2016). <https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevE.93.033125>
- <span id="page-97-2"></span>N. Yokoi, M. Hoshino, Flow-turbulence interaction in magnetic reconnection. Phys. Plasmas **18**, 111208 (2011).<https://doi.org/10.1063/1.3641968>
- N. Yokoi, A. Yoshizawa, Statistical analysis of the efects of helicity in inhomogeneous turbulence. Phys. Fluids A **5**, 464–477 (1993).<https://doi.org/10.1063/1.858869>
- <span id="page-97-1"></span>N. Yokoi, R. Rubinstein, A. Yoshizawa, F. Hamba, A turbulence model for magnetohydrodynamic plasmas. J. Turbul. **824**(9), 37–125 (2008).<https://doi.org/10.1080/14685240802433057>
- <span id="page-97-3"></span>N. Yokoi, K. Higashimori, M. Hoshino, Transport enhancement and suppression in turbulent magnetic reconnection: a self-consistent turbulence model. Phys. Plasmas **20**, 122310 (2013). [https://doi.org/10.](https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4851976) [1063/1.4851976](https://doi.org/10.1063/1.4851976)
- N. Yokoi, D. Schmitt, V. Pipin, F. Hamba, A new simple dynamo model for stellar activity cycle. Astrophys. J. **824**, 67 (2016).<https://doi.org/10.3847/0004-637X/824/2/67>
- N. Yokoi, Y. Masada, T. Takiwaki, Modelling stellar convective transport with plumes-I. Non-equilibrium turbulence efect in double-averaging formulation. Mon. Not. R. Astron. Soc. **516**, 2718–2735 (2022). <https://doi.org/10.1093/mnras/stac1181>
- A. Yoshizawa, Statistical analysis of the deviation of the Reynolds stress from its eddy-viscosity representation. Phys. Fluids **27**, 1377–1387 (1984)
- A. Yoshizawa, Self-consistent turbulent dynamo modeling of reversed feld pinches and planetary magnetic felds. Phys. Fluids B **2**, 1589–1600 (1990)
- <span id="page-97-0"></span>A. Yoshizawa, N. Yokoi, S.-I. Itoh, K. Itoh, Magnetohydrodynamic mechanisms of electric-feld transport suppression and plasma-rotation generation, with special reference to tokamak's reversed-shear confnement. Phys. Plasmas **6**, 3194–3206 (1999)

**Publisher's Note** Springer Nature remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

# **Authors and Afliations**

# **Nobumitsu Yokoi1,[2](http://orcid.org/0000-0002-5242-7634)**

- $\boxtimes$  Nobumitsu Yokoi nobyokoi@iis.u-tokyo.ac.jp
- <sup>1</sup> Institute of Industrial Science, University of Tokyo, Komaba, Meguro, Tokyo 153-8505, Japan
- <sup>2</sup> Nordic Institute for Theoretical Physics, Stockholm University and KTH, Hannes Alfvén väg, 106 91 Stockholm, Sweden